

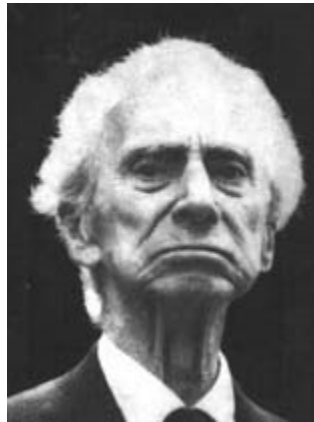
Scientific Technique and Power

The Scientific Outlook

Brent Jessop

<http://www.knowledgedrivenrevolution.com/> - This is the complete set of main articles from **Brent Jessop's** site **Knowledge Driven Revolution** which is no longer being updated by him.

A big thanks to him for all his efforts over the past few years.



Bertrand Russell

This series examines Bertrand Russell's 1931 book *The Scientific Outlook*. Bertrand Arthur William Russell, 3rd Earl Russell (1872-1970) was a renowned British philosopher and mathematician who was an adamant internationalist and worked extensively on the education of young children. This included running an experimental school in the 1920's with his second wife Dora Black. He was the founder of the [Pugwash movement](#) which used the spectre of Cold War nuclear annihilation to push for world government. Among many other prizes, Russell was awarded the [Nobel Prize in Literature](#) in 1950 and UNESCO's (United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization) [Kalinga prize](#) for the popularization of science in 1957.

Part 1 of this series examines science as power-thought and the use of scientific technique to increase the power of an elite scientific minority over the unscientific masses. Part 2 examines the composition of the society of experts who will use scientific technique to dominate the masses. At the forefront of this society of experts is the expert "manipulator", whom Lenin is the archetype. This society also aims to conceal its power and influence behind political veils like democracy. Part 3 explores the application of scientific technique to education with an emphasis on the distinction between education for the "governing class" and "working class". Part 4 looks at the use of education, the Press, radio and Hollywood as forms of propaganda. Part 5 examines the use of behaviourism, psycho-analysis and physiological manipulation as applied to education.

Part 6 examines the application of scientific technique to the reproduction of human beings including the separate breeding techniques to be applied to the "governing class" compared with the "working class". This also includes the creation of a "priestly class" within the ruling governing class. Part 7 explores the changes to freedom and equality in the scientific society. This includes changes in the relationship between individual freedom and the collective good, freedom of speech and the Press, freedom to choose ones own career and the freedom to have children. Part 8 examines the changes to free trade and labour in the scientific. Including the removal of competition and the choice between pre-determined work or prison. The final article describes the creation of two artificial societies including the design and implementation of a new religion specifically for that new planned society. The two societies described are: Japan following their 1867 revolution and Russia following the Bolshevik revolution.

Scientific Technique and Power

The Scientific Outlook Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

June 30, 2008

"The scientific society with which the following chapters are to be concerned is, in the main, a thing of the future, although various of its characteristics are adumbrated in various States at the present day, The scientific society, as I conceive it, is one which employs the best scientific technique in production, in education, and in propaganda. But in addition to this, it has a characteristic which distinguishes it from the societies of the past, which have grown up by natural causes, without much conscious planning as regards their collective purpose and structure. No society can be regarded as fully scientific unless it has been created deliberately with a certain structure in order to fulfill certain purposes." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p203)

Science as Power-Thought

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"But scientific thought is different from this. **It is essentially power-thought - the sort of thought, that is to say, whose purpose, conscious or unconscious, is to give power to its possessor.** Now power is a causal concept, and to obtain power over any given material, one need only understand the causal laws to which it is subject. This is an essentially abstract matter, and the more irrelevant details we can omit from our purview, the more powerful our thoughts will become. The same sort of thing can be illustrated in

the economic sphere. The cultivator, who knows every corner of his farm, has a concrete knowledge of wheat, and makes very little money; the railway which carries his wheat views it in a slightly more abstract way, and makes rather more money; the Stock Exchange manipulator, who knows it only in its purely abstract aspect of something which may go up or down, is, in his way, as remote from concrete reality as the physicist, and he, of all those concerned in the economic sphere, makes the most money and has the most power. So it is with science, though the power which the man of science seeks is more remote and impersonal than that which is sought on the Stock Exchange.

The extreme abstractness of modern physics makes it difficult to understand, but gives to those who can understand it a grasp of the world as a whole, a sense of its structure and mechanism, which no less abstract apparatus could possibly supply. The power of using abstractions is the essence of intellect, and with every increase in abstraction the intellectual triumphs of science are enhanced." - 83

"It has had hitherto less success in direct applications to man, and it therefore still meets with opposition from traditional beliefs where man is concerned, but it cannot well be doubted that, if our civilization survives, man also will soon come to be viewed scientifically. This will have a great effect upon education and the criminal law, perhaps also on family life. Such developments, however, belong to the future." - 143

"Science increases our power to do both good and harm, and therefore enhances the need for restraining destructive impulses. If a scientific world is to survive, it is therefore necessary that men should become tamer than they have been. The splendid criminal must no longer be an ideal, and **submissiveness must be more admired than it has been in the past**. In all this there will be both gain and loss, and it is not within human power to strike a balance between the two." - 215

"In psychological terms, this means that the love of power has thrust aside all the other impulses that make the complete human life. Love, parenthood, pleasure, and beauty are of less account to the modern industrialist than to the princely magnates of past times. Manipulation and exploitation are the ruling passions of the typical scientific industrialist. The average man may not share this narrow concentration, but for that very reason he fails to acquire a hold on the sources of power, and leaves the practical government of the world to the fanatics of mechanism. The power of producing changes in the world which is possessed by the leaders of big business in the present age far exceeds the power ever possessed by individuals in the past. **They may not be as free to cut off heads as were Nero or Jenghiz Khan, but they can settle who shall starve and who shall become rich, they can divert the course of rivers, and decree the fall of governments**. All history shows that great power is intoxicating. Fortunately, the modern holders of power are not yet quite aware how much they could do if they chose, but when this knowledge dawns upon them a new era in human tyranny is to be expected." - 152

Scientific Technique

"The social effect of modern scientific technique is, in practically all directions, to demand an increase both in the size and intensity of organization. When I speak of the intensity of organization I mean the proportion of a man's activities that is governed by the fact of his belonging to some social unit. The primitive peasant may be almost entirely self-directed; he produces his own food, buys very little, and does not send his children to school. The modern man, even if he happens to be an agriculturist, produces only a small proportion of what he eats; if he grows wheat, for example, he probably sells the whole of his crop and buys his bread from the baker like any other man; even if he does not do this, he has to buy most of the rest of his feed. In his buying and selling he depends upon immense organizations which are usually international; his reading is provided by the great newspapers, his amusements by Hollywood, the education of his children by the State, his capital, in part at least, by a bank, his political opinions by his Party, his safety and many of his amenities by the Government to which he pays taxes. Thus in all his most important activities he has ceased to be a separate unit and has become dependent upon some social organization. As scientific technique advances, the most profitable size for most organizations increases. In a great many respects national boundaries have become a technical absurdity, and further advance demands that they should be ignored. Unfortunately nationalism is immensely strong, and the increasing power of propaganda which scientific technique has put into the hands of national States is being used to strengthen this anarchic force. Until this state of affairs is amended, scientific technique will not be able to achieve the results of which it is capable in the way of promoting human welfare." - 198

"The greatest triumphs of applied science so far have been in the realm of physics and chemistry. **When people think of scientific technique they think primarily of machines.** It seems probable that in the near future science will achieve equal triumphs in biological and physiological directions, and **will ultimately acquire as much power to change men's minds as it already has power to deal with our inanimate environment.**" - 146

"No sharp line can be drawn between scientific technique and traditional arts and crafts. **The essential characteristic of scientific technique is the utilization of natural forces in ways not evident to the totally uninstructed.**" - 137

"The power of psychological technique to mould the mentality of the individual is still in its infancy, and is not yet fully realized. There can, I think, be little doubt that it will increase enormously in the near future. **Science has given us, in succession, power over inanimate nature, power over plants and animals, and finally power over human beings.** Each power involves its own kinds of dangers, and perhaps the dangers involved in power over human beings are the greatest, but that is a matter that we will consider at a later stage." - 185

"While it is rather rash to make detailed prophecies, it is, I think, fairly clear that in future a human body, from the moment of conception, will not be regarded merely as something which must be left to grow in accordance with natural forces, with no human interference beyond what is required for the preservation of health. **The tendency of scientific**

technique is to cause everything to be regarded as not just a brute datum, but raw material for the carrying out of some human purpose. The child, and even the embryo, will come to be viewed more and more in this way as the mentality connected with scientific technique becomes more dominant. In this, as in all other forms of scientific power, there are possibilities of good and possibilities of evil. Science alone will not decide which is to prevail." - 172

Conclusion

[Part 2](#) of this series will examine the composition of the society of experts who will use scientific technique to dominate the masses. The application of scientific technique to education will be examined in [part 3](#) with an emphasis on the distinction between the education for the "governing class" and "working class". [Part 4](#) will look at the use of education, the Press, radio and Hollywood as propaganda. The use of behaviourism, psycho-analysis and physiological manipulation as applied to education will be examined in [part 5](#). [Part 6](#) will examine the application of scientific technique to the reproduction of human beings including the separate breeding techniques to be applied to the "governing class" compared with the "working class". Changes to Freedom and equality in the scientific society will be examined in [part 7](#). [Part 8](#) will examine changes to free trade and labour in the scientific society. Finally, [Part 9](#) will describe two examples of artificially designed societies, including the creation of a new religion specifically for that new planned society.

[1] Bertrand Russell, *The Scientific Outlook* (1931). First Edition.

The Rule of the Scientific Expert

The Scientific Outlook Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

July 7, 2008

"Equality, like liberty, is difficult to reconcile with scientific technique, since this involves a great apparatus of experts and officials inspiring and controlling vast organizations. Democratic forms may be preserved in politics, but they will not have as much reality as in a community of small peasant proprietors. Officials unavoidably have power. And where many vital questions are so technical that the ordinary man cannot hope to understand them, experts must inevitably acquire a considerable measure of control." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p224)

The Expert Manipulator

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"When I speak of scientific government I ought, perhaps, to explain what I mean by the term. I do not mean simply a government composed of men of science. [...] I should define a government as in a greater or less degree scientific in proportion as it can produce intended results: the greater the number of results that it can both intend and produce, the more scientific it is. [...]

Owing to the increase of knowledge, it is possible for governments nowadays to achieve many more intended results than were possible in former times, and it is likely that before very long results which even now are impossible will become possible. [...] Eugenics, except in the form of sterilization of the feeble-minded, is not yet practical politics, but may become so within the next fifty years. As we have already seen, it may be superseded, when embryology is more advanced, by direct methods of operating upon the foetus.

All these are things which, as soon as they become clearly feasible, will make a great appeal to energetic and practical idealists. Most idealists are a mixture of two types, which we may call respectively the dreamer and the manipulator. The pure dreamer is a lunatic, the pure manipulator is a man who cares only for personal power, but the idealist lives in an intermediate position between these two extremes. Sometimes the dreamer preponderates, sometimes the manipulator. William Morris found pleasure in dreaming of "News from Nowhere"; Lenin found no satisfaction until he could clothe his ideas in a garment of reality. Both types of idealist desire a world different from that in which they find themselves, but the manipulator feels strong enough to create it, while the dreamer, feeling baffled, takes refuge in phantasy. **It is the manipulative type of idealist who will create the scientific society. Of such men, in our own day, Lenin is the archetype.** The manipulator idealist differs from the man of merely personal ambition by the fact that he desires not only certain things for himself, but a certain kind of society. Cromwell would not have been content to have been Lord Lieutenant of Ireland in succession to Strafford, or Archbishop of Canterbury in succession to Laud. It was essential to his happiness that England should be a certain sort of country, not merely that he should be prominent in it. It is this element of impersonal desire which distinguishes the idealist from other men. For men of this type there has been in Russia since the Revolution more scope than in any other country at any other time, and **the more scientific technique is perfected the more scope there will be for them everywhere.** I fully expect, therefore, that men of this sort will have a predominant part to play in moulding the world during the next two hundred years.

The attitude of what may be called practical idealists among men of science at the present day towards problems of government is very clearly set forth in a leading article in *Nature* (September 6, 1930), from which the following are extracts:

"[...] In the modern world the dangers arising from mistakes caused by prejudice and neglect of impartial or scientific inquiry are infinitely more serious. In an age when nearly all the problems of [governmental and industrial] administration and development involve scientific factors, civilization cannot afford to leave administrative control in the hands of those who have no first-hand knowledge of science. ...

Under modern conditions, therefore, more is required of scientific workers than the mere enlargement of the bounds of knowledge. They can no longer be content to allow others to take the results of their discoveries and use them unguided. Scientific workers must accept responsibility for the control of the forces which have been released by their work. Without their help, efficient administration and a high degree of statesmanship are virtually impossible.

The practical problem of establishing a right relationship between science and politics, between knowledge and power, or **more precisely between the scientific worker and the control and administration of the life of the community**, is one of the most difficult confronting democracy. The community is, however, entitled to expect from members of the British Association some consideration of such a problem and some guidance as to the means by which science can assume its place of leadership. ...

It is significant that, in contrast to the relative impotence of scientific workers in national affairs, in the international sphere advisory committees of experts have since the War exerted a remarkable and effective influence even when devoid of all legislative authority. To committees of experts organized by the League of Nations, and exercising advisory functions only, is due the credit of the schemes which were successful in rescuing a European State from bankruptcy and chaos, and in handling an unemployment scheme which settled a million and a half refugees, following upon the greatest migration in history. These examples sufficiently demonstrate that, given the requisite stimulus and enthusiasm, the scientific expert can already exert an effective influence when normal administrative effort has failed, and when indeed, as in the case of Austria, the problem had been dismissed by statesmen as hopeless.

In truth, scientific workers occupy a privileged position in society as well as industry, and there are welcome signs that this is now recognized by scientific workers themselves. Thus, in his presidential address to the Chemical Society (at Leeds) last year, Professor Jocelyn Thorpe suggested that **the age is at hand in which the changing majorities of governments will no longer be able to determine major policies, except in directions approved by organized industry, and, in advocating the closer organization of science and industry, stressed the political strength to be obtained thereby.** [...] Whatever inspiration or encouragement the meetings of the British Association may give to scientific workers in the prosecution of their researches, there is no way in which the Association can more fittingly serve humanity than by calling scientific workers to accept those wide responsibilities of leadership in society as well as in industry which their own efforts have made their inevitable lot."

It will be seen from the above that men of science are becoming conscious of the responsibility towards society conferred by their knowledge, and are feeling it a duty to take a larger part in the direction of public affairs than they have hitherto done." - 227

The Society of Experts and the Oblivious Masses

"The society of experts which I am imagining will embrace all eminent men of science except a few wrong-headed and anarchical cranks. It will possess the sole up-to-date armaments, and will be the repository of all new secrets in the art of war. There will, therefore, be no more war, since resistance by the unscientific will be doomed to obvious failure. The society of experts will control propaganda and education. It will teach loyalty to the world government, and make nationalism high treason. The government, being an oligarchy, will instil submissiveness into the great bulk of the population, confining initiative and the habit of command to its own members. **It is possible that it may invent ingenious ways of concealing its own power, leaving the forms of democracy intact, and allowing the plutocrats to imagine that they are cleverly controlling these forms.** Gradually, however, as the plutocrats become stupid through laziness, they will lose their wealth; it will pass more and more into public ownership and be controlled by the government of experts. Thus, **whatever the outward forms may be, all real power will come to be concentrated in the hands of those who understand the art of scientific manipulation.**" -236

This idea of concealing the real power structure from the masses was later described by Bertrand Russell in his book *The Impact of Science on Society*[2] (1952):

"Although this science will be diligently studied, **it will be rigidly confined to the governing class. The populace will not be allowed to know how its convictions were generated.** When the technique has been perfected, every government that has been in charge of education for a generation will be able to control its subjects securely without the need of armies or policemen [...]" - 41

Scientific Technique and Education

The Scientific Outlook Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

July 13, 2008



"Although this science will be diligently studied, **it will be rigidly confined to the governing class. The populace will not be allowed to know how its convictions were generated.** When the technique has been perfected, every government that has been in charge of education for a generation will be able to control its subjects securely without the need of armies or policemen..." - Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p41)

Education for the Working Class

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Education has two purposes: on the one hand to form the mind, on the other hand to train the citizen. [...]"

Education in a scientific society may, I think, be best conceived after the analogy of the education provided by the Jesuits. The Jesuits provided one sort of education for the boys who were to become ordinary men of the world, and another for those who were to become members of the Society of Jesus. In like manner, the scientific rulers will provide one kind of education for ordinary men and women, and another for those who are to become holders of scientific power. **Ordinary men and women will be expected to be docile, industrious, punctual, thoughtless, and contented.** Of these qualities probably

contentment will be considered the most important. In order to produce it, all the researches of psycho-analysis, behaviourism, and biochemistry will be brought into play. Children will be educated from their earliest years in the manner which is found least likely to produce complexes. Almost all will be normal, happy, healthy boys or girls. **Their diet will not be left to the caprices of parents, but will be such as the best biochemists recommend.** They will spend much time in the open air, and **will be given no more book-learning than is absolutely necessary.** Upon the temperament so formed, **docility** will be imposed by the methods of the drill-sergeant, or perhaps by the softer methods employed upon Boy Scouts. **All the boys and girls will learn from an early age to be what is called "co-operative," i.e., to do exactly what everybody is doing. Initiative will be discouraged in these children, and insubordination, without being punished, will be scientifically trained out of them.** Their education thought will be in great part manual, and when their school years come to an end they will be taught a trade. In deciding what trade they are to adopt, experts will appraise their aptitudes. Formal lessons, in so far as they exist, will be conducted by means of the cinema or the radio, so that one teacher can give simultaneous lessons in all the classes throughout a whole country. **The giving of these lessons will, of course, be recognized as a highly skilled undertaking, reserved for the members of the governing class.** All that will be required locally to replace the present-day school-teacher will be a lady to keep order, though it is hoped that the children will be so well-behaved that they will seldom require this estimable person's services." - 243

"As for the manual workers, they will be discouraged from serious thought: they will be made as comfortable as possible, and their hours of work will be much shorter than they are at present; they will have no fear of destitution or of misfortune to their children. **As soon as working hours are over, amusements will be provided, or a sort calculated to cause wholesome mirth, and to prevent any thoughts of discontent which otherwise might cloud their happiness.**

On those rare occasions when a boy or girl who has passed the age at which it is usual to determine social status shows such marked ability as to seem the intellectual equal of the rulers, a difficult situation will arise, requiring serious consideration. If the youth is content to abandon his previous associates and to throw in his lot whole-heartedly with the rulers, he may, after suitable tests, be promoted, but **if he shows any regrettable solidarity with his previous associates, the rulers will reluctantly conclude that there is nothing to be done with him except to send him to the lethal chamber before his ill-disciplined intelligence has had time to spread revolt.** This will be a painful duty to the rulers, but I think they will not shrink from performing it." - 248

Education for the Governing Class

"Those children, on the other hand, who are destined to become members of the governing class will have a very different education. They will be selected, some before birth, some during the first three years of life, and a few between the ages of three and six. All the best-known science will be applied to the simultaneous development of **intelligence and will-power.**

Eugenics, chemical and thermal treatment of the embryo, and diet in early years will be used with a view to the production of the highest possible ultimate ability. The scientific outlook will be instilled from the moment that a child can talk, and throughout the early impressionable years the child will be carefully guarded from contact with the ignorant and unscientific. From infancy up to twenty-one, scientific knowledge will be poured into him, and at any rate from the age of twelve upwards he will specialize in those sciences for which he shows the most aptitude. At the same time he will be taught physical toughness; he will be encouraged to roll naked in the snow, to fast occasionally for twenty-four, to run many miles on hot days, to be bold in all physical adventures and uncomplaining when he suffers physical pain. From the age of twelve upwards he will be taught to organize children slightly younger than himself, and will suffer severe censure if groups of such children fail to follow his lead. A sense of his high destiny will be constantly set before him, and **loyalty towards his order will be so axiomatic that it will never occur to him to question it. Every youth will thus be subjected to a threefold training: in intelligence, in self-command, and in command over others. If he should fail in any one of these three, he will suffer the terrible penalty of degradation to the ranks of common workers, and will be condemned for the rest of his life to associate with men and women vastly inferior to himself in education and probably in intelligence.** The spur of this fear will suffice to produce industry in all but a very small minority of boys and girls of the governing class.

Except for the one matter of loyalty to the world State and to their own order, members of the governing class will be encouraged to be adventurous and full of initiative. It will be recognized that it is their business to improve scientific technique, and to keep the manual workers contented by means of continual new amusements. As those upon whom all progress depends, they must not be unduly tame, nor so drilled as to be incapable of new ideas. **Unlike the children destined to be manual workers,** they will have personal contact with their teacher, and will be encouraged to argue with him. It will be his business to prove himself in the right if he can, and, if not, to acknowledge his error gracefully. There will, however, be limits to intellectual freedom, even among the children of the governing class. They will not be allowed to question the value of science, or the division of the population into manual workers and experts. They will not be allowed to coquette with the idea that perhaps poetry is as valuable as machinery, or love as good a thing as scientific research. **If such ideas do occur to any venturesome spirit, they will be received in a pained silence, and there will be a pretence that they have not been heard.**

A profound sense of public duty will be instilled into boys and girls of the governing class as soon as they are able to understand such an idea. They will be taught to feel that mankind depends upon them, and that they owe benevolent service especially to the less fortunate classes beneath them. But let it not be supposed that they will be prigs - far from it. They will turn off with a deprecating laugh any too portentous remark that puts into explicit words what they will all believe in their hearts. Their manners will be easy and pleasant, and their sense of humour unfailing." - 244

"Education used to begin at eight years old with the learning of the Latin declensions; now, under the influence of psycho-analysis, it begins at birth. It is to be expected that with the advance of experimental embryology the important part of education will be found to be pre-natal. This is already the case with fishes and newts, but in regard to them the scientist is not hampered by education authorities." - 185

"In normal cases, children of sufficiently excellent heredity will be admitted to the governing class from the moment of conception. I start with this moment rather than with birth, since it is from this moment and not merely from the moment of birth that the treatment of the two classes will be different. If, however, by the time the child reaches the age of three, it is fairly clear that he does not attain the required standard, he will be degraded at that point. I assume that by that time it will be possible to judge of the intelligence of a child of three with a fair measure of accuracy. Cases in which there is doubt, which should, however, be few, will be subjected to careful observation up to the age of six, at which moment one supposes the official decision will be possible except in a few rare instances. Conversely, children born of manual workers may be promoted at any moment between the age of three and six, but only in quite rare instances at later ages. **I think it maybe assumed, however, that there would be a very strong tendency for the governing class to become hereditary**, and that after a few generations not many children would be moved from either class into the other. This is especially likely to be the case if embryological methods of improving the breed are applied to the governing class, but not to the others. **In this way the gulf between the two classes as regards native intelligence may become continually wider and wider. This will not lead to the abolition of the less intelligent class, since the rulers will not wish to undertake uninteresting manual work, or to be deprived of the opportunity for exercising benevolence and public spirit which they derive from the management of the manual workers.**" - 249

Education for the Priestly Class

"The latest stage in the education of the most intellectual of the governing class will consist of training for research. Research will be highly organized, and young people will not be allowed to choose what particular piece of research they shall do. They will, of course, be directed to research in those subjects for which they have shown special ability. **A great deal of scientific knowledge will be concealed from all but a few. There will be arcane reserved for a priestly class of researchers, who will be carefully selected for their combination of brains with loyalty.** One may, I think, expect that research will be much more technical than fundamental. The men at the head of any department of research will be elderly, and content to think that the fundamentals of their subject are sufficiently known. Discoveries which upset the official view of fundamentals, if they are made by young men, will incur disfavour, and if rashly published will lead to degradation. Young men to whom any fundamental innovation occurs will make cautious attempts to persuade their professors to view the new ideas with favour, but if these attempts fail they will conceal their new ideas until they themselves have acquired positions of authority, by which time they will probably have forgotten them. The atmosphere of authority and organization will be extremely

favourable to technical research, but somewhat inimical to such subversive innovations as have been seen, for example, in physics during the present century. There will be, of course, an official metaphysic, which will be regarded as intellectually unimportant but politically sacrosanct. In the long run, the rate of scientific progress will diminish, and discovery will be killed by respect for authority." - 247

Propaganda: From the Class Room to Hollywood

The Scientific Outlook Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

July 20, 2008



"I think the subject which will be of most importance politically is mass psychology. Mass psychology is, scientifically speaking, not a very advanced study... This study is immensely useful to practical men, whether they wish to become rich or to acquire the government. It is, of course, as a science, founded upon individual psychology, but hitherto it has employed rule-of-thumb methods which were based upon a kind of intuitive common sense. Its importance has been enormously increased by the growth of **modern methods of propaganda. Of these the most influential is what is called 'education'**. Religion plays a part, though a diminishing one; the Press, the cinema and the radio play an increasing part." - Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p40)

Mass Psychology

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"There is, however, a large amount of genuine experimental science in social affairs. Perhaps the most important set of experiments in this realm is that which we owe to advertisers. This material, valuable as it is, has not been utilized by experimental psychologists, because it belongs to a region remote from the Universities, and they would feel themselves vulgarized by contact with anything so gross. But anybody who is in earnest in studying the psychology of belief cannot do better than consult the great advertising firms. No test of belief is so searching as the financial one. When a man is willing to back his belief by spending money in accordance with it, his belief must be regarded as genuine. Now this is precisely the test which the advertiser is perpetually applying. Various people's soaps are recommended in various ways; some of these ways produce the desired result, others do not, or at any rate not to the same degree. Clearly the advertisement which causes a man's soap to be bought is more effective in creating belief than the one which does not. I do not think any experienced advertiser would suggest that the merits of the respective soaps had any share whatever in bringing about the result. Very large sums of money are paid to the men who invent good advertisements, and rightly so, **for the power to cause large numbers of people to believe what you assert is a very valuable power**. Consider its importance, for example, to the founders of religions. In the past they often had to adopt the most painful forms of publicity. How much pleasanter their lives would have been if they could have gone to an agent who would have purchased the respect of their disciples in return for a percentage on the ecclesiastical revenues!

From the technique of advertising it seems to follow that in the great majority of mankind any proposition will win acceptance if it is reiterated in such a way as to remain in the memory. Most of the things that we believe we believe because we have heard them affirmed; we do not remember where or why they were affirmed, and we are therefore unable to be critical even when the affirmation was made by a man whose income would be increased by its acceptance and was not backed by any evidence whatever. Advertisements tend, therefore, **as the technique becomes perfected, to be less and less argumentative, and more and more merely striking. So long as an impression is made, the desired result is achieved.**

Considered scientifically, advertisements have another great merit, which is that their effects, so far as is known through the receipts of the advertisers, are mass effects, not effects upon individuals, so that the data acquired are data as to mass psychology. For the purposes of studying society rather than individuals, advertisements are therefore invaluable. Unfortunately their purpose is practical rather than scientific. For scientific purposes I suggest the following experiment. Let two soaps, A and B, be manufactured, of which A is excellent and B abominable; let A be advertised by stating its chemical composition and by testimonials from eminent chemists; let B be advertised by the bare

statement that it is the best, accompanied by the portraits of famous Hollywood beauties. If man is a rational animal, more of A will be sold than of B. Does anyone, in fact, believe that this would be the result?

The advantages of advertisement have come to be realized pretty fully by politicians, but are only beginning to be realized by the Churches; when the Churches become more fully alive to its advantages as compared with the traditional religious technique (which dates from before the invention of printing), we may hope for a great revival of faith. **On the whole, the Soviet Government and the Communist religion are those which hitherto have best understood the use of advertisement. They are, it is true, somewhat hampered by the fact that most Russians cannot read; this obstacle, however, they are doing their best to remove.**" - 187

Education as Propaganda

"This consideration brings us naturally to the subject of education, which is the second great method of public propaganda. Education has two very different purposes; on the one hand it aims at developing the individual and giving him knowledge which will be useful to him; **on the other hand it aims at producing citizens who will be convenient for the State or the Church which is educating them.** Up to a point these two purposes coincide in practice: it is convenient to the State that citizens should be able to read, and that they should possess some technical skill in virtue of which they are able to do productive work; it is convenient that they should possess sufficient moral character to abstain from unsuccessful crime, and sufficient intelligence to be able to direct their own lives. But when we pass beyond these elementary requirements, the interests of the individual may often conflict with those of the State or the Church. This is especially the case in regard to credulity. To those who control publicity, credulity is an advantage, while to the individual a power of critical judgment is likely to be beneficial; consequently the State does not aim at producing a scientific habit of mind, except in a small minority of experts, who are well paid, and therefore, as a rule, supporters of the *status quo*. Among those who are not well paid credulity is more advantageous to the State; consequently children in school are taught what they are told and are punished if they express disbelief. **In this way a conditioned reflex is established, leading to a belief in anything said authoritatively by elderly persons of importance.** You and I, reader, owe out immunity from spoliation to this beneficent precaution on the part of our respective Governments.

One of the purposes of the State in education is certainly, on the whole, beneficent. The purpose in question is that of producing social coherence. In mediaeval Europe, as in modern China, the lack of social coherence proved disastrous. It is difficult for large masses of men to co-operate as much as is necessary for their own welfare. The tendency to anarchy and civil war is always one to be guarded against, except on those rare occasions when some great principle is at stake which is of sufficient importance to make civil war worth while. For this reason that part of education which aims at producing loyalty to the State is to be praised in so far as it is directed against internal anarchy. But in so far as it is directed to the perpetuation of international anarchy, it is bad. On the

whole, at present in education, the form of loyalty to the State which is most emphasized is hostility to its enemies." -190

Uniformity of Opinion - The Press

"Modern inventions and modern technique have had a powerful influence in promoting uniformity of opinion and making men less individual than they used to be. [...] But in the modern world there are three great sources of uniformity in addition to education: these are the Press, the cinema, and the radio.

The Press has become an agent of uniformity as a result of technical and financial causes: the larger the circulation of a newspaper, the higher the rate it can charge for its advertisements and the lower the cost of printing per copy. A foreign correspondent costs just as much whether his newspaper has a large or a small circulation; therefore his relative cost is diminished by every increase in circulation. A newspaper with a large circulation can hire the most expensive legal talent to defend it against libel suits, **and can often conceal from all but serious students its misstatements of facts.** For all these reasons, of which advertisements are the chief, big newspapers tend to please small sets of cranks or high-brows, and there are journals devoted to special interests, such as yachting or fly-fishing, but the immense majority of newspaper readers confine themselves either, as in England, to a small number of newspapers, or, as in America, to a small number of syndicated groups of newspapers. The difference between England and America in this respect is, of course, due to size. **In England, if Lord Rothermere and Lord Beaverbrook desire anything to be known, it will be known; if they desire it to be unknown, it will be unknown** except to a few pertinacious busybodies. Although there are rival groups in the newspaper world, there are, of course, many matters as to which the rival groups are agreed. In a suburban train in the morning, one man may be reading the *Daily Mail* and another the *Daily Express*, but if by some miracle they should fall into conversation **they would not find much divergence in the opinions they had imbibed or in the facts of which they had been informed. Thus for reasons which are ultimately technical and scientific, the newspapers have become an influence tending to uniformity and increasing the rarity of unusual opinions.**" - 191

Uniformity of Opinion - The Radio

"Another modern invention tending towards uniformity is the radio. This, of course, is more the case in England, where it is a Government monopoly, than in America, where it is free. During the General Strike in 1926 it afforded practically the only method of disseminating news. This method was utilized by the Government to state its own case and conceal that of the strikers. I was myself at the time in a remote village, almost the furthest from London, I believe, of any village in England. All the villagers, including myself, assembled in the Post Office every evening to hear the news. A pompous voice would announce: "It is the Home Secretary who has come to make a statement." I regret to say that the villagers all laughed, but if they had been less remote they would probably have been more respectful. In America, where the Government has not interfered with broadcasting, one must expect, if the same policy continues, that there will be a gradual

growth of big interests analogous to the big newspapers, and that these will cover as large a proportion of the ground as does the syndicated Press." - 193

Uniformity of Opinion - The Cinema

"But perhaps the most important of all the modern agents of propaganda is the cinema. Where the cinema is concerned, the technical reasons for large-scale organizations leading to **almost world-wide uniformity** are over-whelming. The costs of a good production are colossal, but are no less if it is exhibited seldom than if it is exhibited often and everywhere. The Germans and the Russians have their own productions, and those of the Russians are, of course, an important part of the Soviet Government's propaganda. **In the rest of the civilized world the products of Hollywood preponderate. The great majority of young people in almost all civilized countries derive their ideas of love, of honour, of the way to make money, and of the importance of good clothes, from the evenings spent in seeing what Hollywood thinks good for them.** I doubt whether all the schools and churches combined have as much influence as the cinema upon the opinions of the young in regard to such intimate matters as love and marriage and money-making. **The producers of Hollywood are the high-priests of a new religion.** Let us be thankful for the lofty purity of their sentiments. We learn from them that sin is always punished, and virtue is always rewarded. True, the reward is rather gross, and such as a more old-fashioned virtue might not wholly appreciate. But what of that? We know from the cinema that wealth comes to the virtuous, and from real life that old So-and-so has wealth. It follows that old So-and-so is virtuous, and that the people who say he exploits his employees are slanderers and trouble-makers. **The cinema therefore plays a useful part in safeguarding the rich from the envy of the poor.**

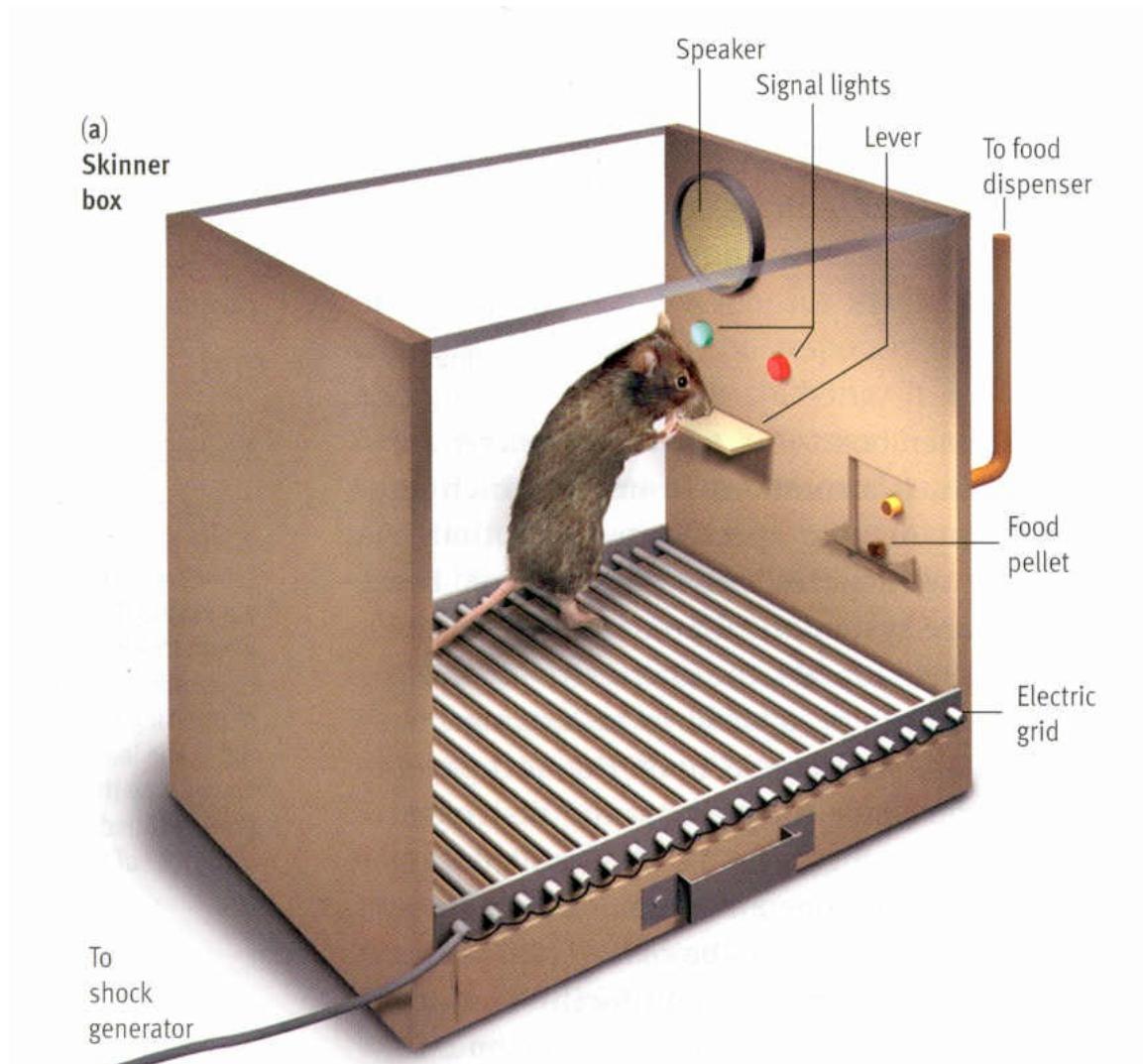
It is undoubtedly an important fact in the modern world that almost all the pleasures of the poor can only be provided by men possessed of vast capital or by Governments. The reasons for this, as we have seen, are technical, but the result is that any defects in the *status quo* become known only to those who are willing to spend their leisure time otherwise than in amusement; these are, of course, a small minority, and from a political point of view they are at most times negligible. There is, however, a certain instability about the whole system. In the event of unsuccessful war it might break down, and **the population, which had grown accustomed to amusements, might be driven by boredom into serious thought.** The Russians, when deprived of vodka by war-time prohibition, made the Russian Revolution. What would Western Europeans do if deprived of their nightly drug from Hollywood? The moral of this for Western European Governments is that they must keep on good terms with America. **In the American imperialism of the future it may turn out that the producers of cinemas have been the pioneers.**" - 194

Behaviourism, Psycho-Analysis and Physiological Manipulation in Education

The Scientific Outlook Part 5

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

July 27, 2008



"Education in a scientific society may, I think, be best conceived after the analogy of the education provided by the Jesuits. The Jesuits provided one sort of education for the boys who were to become ordinary men of the world, and another for those who were to

become members of the Society of Jesus. In like manner, the scientific rulers will provide one kind of education for ordinary men and women, and another for those who are to become holders of scientific power. **Ordinary men and women will be expected to be docile, industrious, punctual, thoughtless, and contented. Of these qualities probably contentment will be considered the most important.** In order to produce it, all the researches of psycho-analysis, behaviourism, and biochemistry will be brought into play." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p243)

Behaviourism and Psycho-Analysis

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"As a technique for acquiring power, behaviourism is, I think, superior to psycho-analysis: it embodies the methods which have always been adopted by those who train animals or drill soldiers; it utilizes the force of habit, the strength of which has always been recognized; and, as we saw when we were considering Pavlov, it makes it possible both to cause and to cure neurasthenia and hysteria. The conflicts which appear in psycho-analysis as emotional re-appear in behaviourism as conflicts between habits, or between a habit and a reflex. If a child were severely beaten every time it sneezed, it is probable that a phantasy world would in time build itself up in his mind around the conception of sneezing; he would dream of Heaven as a place where the spirits of the blest sneeze unceasingly, or on the contrary he might think of Hell as a place of punishment for those who live in open sternutation. In this sort of way the problems brought to the fore by psycho-analysis can, I think, be dealt with on behaviourist lines. At the same time it should be admitted that these problems, whose importance is very great, would probably not have come to the fore but for the psycho-analytic approach. For the practical purposes of educational technique, I think it will be found that the educator should behave as a psycho-analyst when he is concerned with matters touching powerful instincts, but as a behaviourist in matters which a child views as emotionally unimportant. For example, affection for parents should be viewed in the psycho-analytic manner, but brushing teeth in the behaviourist manner." - 182

"The most important applications of psycho-analytic theory are to education. These applications are as yet in an experimental stage, and owing to the hostility of the authorities they can only be made on a very small scale. It is, however, already evident that moral and emotional education has hitherto been conducted on wrong lines, and has produced maladjustments which have been sources of cruelty, timidity, stupidity, and other unfortunate mental characteristics. I think it possible that psycho-analytic theory may be absorbed into something more scientific, but I do not doubt that something of what psycho-analysis has to suggest in regard to education will be found permanently valid and of immense importance." - 181

Physiological Manipulation

"So far, no experiments have been made to test the effect of X-rays on the human embryo. I imagine that such experiments would be illegal, in common with many others that might make valuable additions to our knowledge. Sooner or later, however, probably in Russia, such experiments will be made. If science continues to advance as fast as it has done recently, we may hope, before the end of the present century, to discover ways of beneficially influencing the human embryo, not only as regards those acquired characters which cannot be inherited because they do not affect the chromosomes, but also as regards the chromosomes themselves. It is likely that this result will only be achieved after a number of unsuccessful experiments leading to the birth of idiots and monstrosities. But would this be too high a price to pay for the discovery of a method by which, within one generation, the whole human race could be rendered intelligent?

Perhaps by a suitable choice of chemicals to be injected into the uterus it may become possible to turn a child into a mathematician, a poet, a biologist, or even a politician, and to ensure that all his posterity shall do likewise unless prevented by counter-irritant chemicals." - 172

"So far we have been considering those ways of influencing the mental life which proceed by mental means as in psycho-analysis, or by means of the conditioned reflex as in behaviourism. There are, however, other methods which may in time prove of immense importance. These are the methods which operate through physiological means, such as the administering of drugs. The curing of cretinism by means of iodine is so far the most remarkable of these methods. In Switzerland all salt for human consumption is obliged by law to be iodized, and this measure has been found adequate as a preventive of cretinism. **The work of Cannon and others concerning the influence of the ductless glands upon the emotions has become widely known, and it is clear that by administering artificially the substances which the ductless glands provide, a profound effect can be produced upon temperament and character.** The effects of alcohol, opium, and various other drugs have long been familiar, but these effects are on the balance harmful unless the drug is taken with unusual moderation. There is, however, no *a priori* reason why drugs should not be discovered which have a wholly beneficial effect. I have never myself observed any but good effects to flow from the drinking of tea, at any rate if it is China tea. It is possible also that psychological marvels may become possible through pre-natal treatment. One of the most eminent philosophers of our day regards his superiority to his brothers, perhaps humorously, as due to the fact that shortly before his birth his mother was in a carriage which rolled down the Simplon in an accident. I do not suggest that this method should be adopted in the hope of turning us all into philosophers, but perhaps in time we shall discover some more peaceable means of endowing the foetus with intelligence. **Education used to begin at eight years old with the learning of the Latin declensions; now, under the influence of psycho-analysis, it begins at birth. It is to be expected that with the advance of experimental embryology the important part of education will be found to be pre-natal. This is already the case with fishes and newts, but in regard to them the scientist is not hampered by education authorities.**

The power of psychological technique to mould the mentality of the individual is still in its infancy, and is not yet fully realized. There can, I think, be little doubt that it will

increase enormously in the near future. **Science has given us, in succession, power over inanimate nature, power over plants and animals, and finally power over human beings.** Each power involves its own kinds of dangers, and perhaps the dangers involved in power over human beings are the greatest, but that is a matter that we will consider at a later stage." - 183

"Whether men will be happy in the Paradise I do not know. **Perhaps biochemistry will show us how to make any man happy, provided he has the necessities of life;** perhaps dangerous sports will be organized for those whom boredom would otherwise turn into anarchists; perhaps sport will take over the cruelty which will have been banished from politics; perhaps football will be replaced by play battles in the air in which death will be the penalty of defeat, they will not mind having to seek it in a trivial cause: to fall through the air before a million spectators may come to be thought a glorious death even if it may be that in some such way a safety valve can be provided for the anarchic and violent forces in human nature; or again, **it may be that by wise education and suitable diet men may be cured of all their unruly impulses, and all life may become as quiet as a Sunday school.**" 214

Bertrand Russell would later write in a similar book entitled *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952) [2] that:

"It is to be expected that advances in physiology and psychology will give governments much more control over individual mentality than they now have even in totalitarian countries. Fichte laid it down that **education should aim at destroying free will, so that, after pupils have left school, they shall be incapable, throughout the rest of their lives, of thinking or acting otherwise than as their schoolmasters would have wished.** But in his day this was an unattainable ideal: what he regarded as the best system in existence produced Karl Marx. In future such failures are not likely to occur where there is dictatorship. **Diet, injections, and injunctions will combine, from a very early age, to produce the sort of character and the sort of beliefs that the authorities consider desirable, and any serious criticism of the powers that be will become psychologically impossible.** Even if all are miserable, all will believe themselves happy, because the government will tell them that they are so." - 61

Scientific Technique and Human Reproduction

The Scientific Outlook Part 6

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

August 3, 2008



"While it is rather rash to make detailed prophecies, it is, I think, fairly clear that in future a human body, from the moment of conception, will not be regarded merely as something which must be left to grow in accordance with natural forces, with no human interference beyond what is required for the preservation of health. The tendency of scientific technique is to cause everything to be regarded as not just a brute datum, but raw material for the carrying out of some human purpose. The child, and even the embryo, will come to be viewed more and more in this way as the mentality connected with scientific technique becomes more dominant. In this, as in all other forms of scientific power, there are possibilities of good and possibilities of evil. Science alone will not decide which is to prevail." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p172)

Breeding the Governing Class

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Science, when it has once acquired a firm hold upon social organization, is hardly likely to stop short at those biological aspects of human life which have hitherto been left to the joint guidance of religion and instinct. **We may, I think, assume that both the quantity and the quality of the population will be carefully regulated by the State, but that sexual intercourse apart from children will be regarded as a private matter so long as it is not allowed to interfere with work.** As regards quantity, the State statisticians will determine as carefully as they can whether the population of the world at the moment is above or below the number which leads to the greatest material comfort per head. They will also take account of all such changes of technique as can be foreseen. No doubt the usual rule will be to aim at a stationary population, but if some important invention, such as artificial food, should greatly cheapen the production of necessities, an increase of population might for a time be thought wise. I shall, however, assume that, in normal times, the world government will decree a stationary population.

If we were right in supposing that the scientific society will have different social grades according to the kind of work to be performed, we may assume also that it will have uses for human beings who are not of the highest grade of intelligence. It is probable that there will be certain kinds of labour mainly performed by negroes, and that **manual workers in general will be bred for patience and muscle rather than for brains. The governors and experts, on the contrary, will be bred chiefly for their intellectual powers and their strength of character. Assuming that both kinds of breeding are scientifically carried out, there will come to be an increasing divergence between the two types, making them in the end almost different species.**

Scientific breeding, in any truly scientific form, would at present encounter insuperable obstacles both from religion and from sentiment. To carry it out scientifically it would be necessary, as among domestic animals, to employ only a small percentage of males for purposes of breeding. It may be thought that religion and sentiment will always succeed in opposing an immovable veto to such a system. I wish I could think so. But I believe that **sentiment is quite extraordinarily plastic, and that the individualistic religion to which we have been accustomed is likely to be increasingly replaced by a religion of devotion to the State.** Among Russian Communists this has already happened. In any case, what is demanded is scarcely as difficult a control of natural impulses as is involved in the celibacy of the Catholic priesthood. Wherever remarkable achievements are possible and are at the same time such as to satisfy men's moral idealism, the love of power, is capable of swallowing up the instinctive life of the affections, especially if an outlet is permitted to purely physical sexual impulses. Traditional religion, which has been violently dispossessed in Russia, will suffer a setback everywhere if the Russian experiment proves successful. In any case its outlook is difficult to reconcile with that of industrialism and scientific technique. Traditional religion was based upon a sense of man's impotence in the face of natural forces, whereas scientific technique induces a sense of the impotence of natural forces in the face of man's intelligence. Combined with this sense of power, a certain degree of austerity in regard to the softer pleasures is quite natural. One sees it already in many of those who are creating the mechanistic society of the future. In America this austerity has taken the form of Protestant piety, in Russia of devotion to Communism.

I think, therefore, that there is hardly any limit to the departures from traditional sentiment which science may introduce into the question of reproduction. If the simultaneous regulation of quantity and quality is taken seriously in the future, we may expect that in each generation some 25 per cent. of women and some 5 per cent. of men will be selected to be the parents of the next generation, while the remainder of the population will be sterilized, which will in no way interfere with their sexual pleasures, but will merely render these pleasures destitute of social importance. The women who are selected for breeding will have to have eight or nine children each, but will not be expected to perform any other work except the suckling of the children for a suitable number of months. No obstacles will be placed upon their relations with sterile men, or upon the relations of sterile men and women with each other, but **reproduction will be regarded as a matter which concerns the State, and will not be left to the free choice of the persons concerned.** Perhaps it will be found that artificial impregnation is more

certain and less embarrassing, since it will obviate the need of any personal contact between the father and mother of the prospective child. Sentiments of personal affection may still be connected with intercourse not intended to be fruitful, while impregnation will be regarded in an entirely different manner, more in the light of a surgical operation, so that it will be thought not ladylike to have it performed in the natural manner. **The qualities for which parents will be chosen will differ greatly according to the status which it is hoped the child will occupy. In the governing class a considerable degree of intelligence will be demanded of parents; perfect health will, of course, be indispensable.** So long as gestation is allowed to persist to its natural period, mothers will also have to be selected by their capacity for easy delivery, and will therefore have to be free from an unduly narrow pelvis. It is probable, however, that as time goes on the period of gestation will be shortened, and that later months of foetal development will take place in an incubator. This would also free mothers from the need of suckling their children, and would thus make maternity a not very onerous matter. The care of infants intended to belong to the governing class would seldom be left to the mothers. Mothers would be selected by their eugenic qualities, and these would not necessarily be the qualities required in a nurse. On the other hand, the early months of pregnancy might be more burdensome than at present, since the foetus would be subjected to various kinds of scientific treatment intended to affect beneficially not only its own characteristics but those of its possible descendants.

Fathers would, of course, have nothing to do with their own children. There would be in general only one father to every five mothers, and it is quite likely that he would never have even seen the mothers of his children. The sentiment of paternity would thus disappear completely. Probably in time the same thing would happen, though to a slightly less degree, in regard to mothers. If birth were prematurely induced, and the child separated from its mother at birth, maternal sentiment would have little chance to develop." - 251

Breeding the Working Class

"Among the workers it is probable that less elaborate care would be taken, since it is easier to breed for muscle than to breed for brains, and **it is not unlikely that women would be allowed to bring up their own children in the old-fashioned natural manner.** There would not be, among the workers, the same need as among the governors for fanatical devotion to the State, and there would not be, therefore, on the part of the government, the same jealousy of the private affections. Among the governors, one must suppose, all private sentiments would be viewed with suspicion. A man and woman who showed any ardent devotion to each other would be regarded as they are at present regarded by moralists when they are not married. There would be professional nurses in *crèches*, and professional teachers in nursery schools, but they would be considered to be failing in their duty if they felt any special affection for special children. Children who showed any special affection for a particular adult would be separated from that adult. Ideas of this kind are already widespread; they will be found suggested, for example, in Dr. John B. Watson's book on education. **The tendency of the scientific manipulator is to regard all private affections as unfortunate.** Freudians have shown us that they are

the sources of complexes. Administrators realize that they stand in the way of a whole-hearted devotion to business. The Church sanctioned certain kinds of love while condemning others, but the modern ascetic is more thoroughgoing, and condemns all kinds of love equally as mere folly and waste of time." - 255

The Psychological Makeup

"What should we expect of the mental make-up of people in such a world? **The manual workers may, I think, be fairly happy. One may assume that the rulers will be successful in making the manual workers foolish and frivolous; work will not be too severe, and there will be endless amusements of a trivial sort. Owing to sterilization, love affairs need not have awkward consequences so long as they are not between a man and woman who are both of them unsterilized. In this way a life of easygoing and frivolous pleasure may be provided for the manual workers, combined of course with a superstitious reverence for the governors instilled in childhood and prolonged by the propaganda to which adults will be exposed.**

The psychology of the governors will be a more difficult matter. **They will be expected to display an arduous and hard-working devotion to the ideal of the scientific State, and to sacrifice to this ideal all the softer sentiments such as love of wife and children.** Friendships between fellow-workers, whether of the same or of different sexes, will tend to become ardent, and will not infrequently overstep the limits which the public moralists will have fixed. In such a case the authorities will separate the friends, unless in doing so they will interrupt some important research or administrative undertaking. When for some such public reason friends are not separated, they will be admonished. **By means of governmental microphones the censors will listen-in to their conversations, and if these should at any time become tinged with sentiment, disciplinary measures will be adopted. All the deeper feelings will be frustrated, with the sole exception of devotion to science and the State.**

The governors will, of course, have their amusements for leisure hours. I do not see how art or literature could flourish in such a world, nor do I think that the emotions from which they spring and to which they appeal would meet with governmental approval, but athletics of a strenuous kind will be encouraged among the young of the governing class, and dangerous sports will be considered valuable as a training in those habits of mind and body by which authority over the manual workers will be maintained. Love-making among the sterilized will be subjected to no restrictions either of law or of public opinion, but it will be casual and temporary, involving none of the deeper feelings and no serious affection. Persons suffering from unendurable boredom will be encouraged to ascend Mount Everest or fly over the South Pole, but the need for such distractions will be regarded as a sign of mental or physical ill-health.

In such a world, though there may be pleasure, there will be no joy. The result will be a type displaying the usual characteristics of vigorous ascetics. **They will be harsh and unbending, tending towards cruelty in their ideals and their readiness to consider that the infliction of pain is necessary for the public good. I do not imagine that pain**

will be much inflicted as punishment for sin, since no sin will be recognized except insubordination and failure to carry out the purposes of the State. It is more probable that the sadistic impulses which the asceticism will generate will find their outlet in scientific experiment. The advancement of knowledge will be held to justify much torture of individuals by surgeons, biochemists, and experimental psychologist. As time goes on the amount of added knowledge required to justify a given amount of pain will diminish, and the number of governors attracted to the kinds of research necessitating cruel experiments will increase. Just as the sun worship of the Aztecs demanded the painful death of thousands of human beings annually, so the new scientific religion will demand its holocausts of sacred victims. Gradually the world will grow more dark and more terrible. Strange perversions of instinct will first lurk in the dark corners and then gradually overwhelm the men in high places. Sadistic pleasures will not suffer the moral condemnation that will be meted out to the softer joys, since, like the persecutions of the Inquisition, they will be found in harmony with the prevailing asceticism. In the end such a system must break down either in an orgy of bloodshed or in the rediscovery of joy.

Such at least is the only ray of hope to lighten the darkness of these visions of Cassandra, but perhaps in permitting this ray of hope we have allowed ourselves to yield to a foolish optimism. **Perhaps by means of injections and drugs and chemicals the population could be induced to bear whatever its scientific masters may decide to be for its good.** New forms of drunkenness involving no subsequent headache may be discovered, and new forms of intoxication may be invented so delicious that for their sakes these are possibilities in a world governed by knowledge without love, and power without delight. The man drunk with power is destitute of wisdom, and so long as he rules the world, the world will be a place devoid of beauty and of joy." - 256

Scientific Technique and the Abolition of the Family

"Take again such a matter as housing. In England individualism leads most families to prefer a small house of their own rather than an apartment in a large house. The result is that the suburbs of London are spread out through mile after mile of dreariness, to the immense detriment of the women and children. Each housewife cooks an abominable dinner at great expenditure of labour for an infuriated husband. The children, when they come home from school, or while they are too young to go to school, find themselves cooped up in small stuffy premises where either they are a nuisance to their parents or their parents are a nuisance to them. **In a more sensible community, each family would occupy a part of an immense building with a courtyard in the middle; there would be no individual cooking, but only communal meals. Children, as soon as they were no longer at the breast, would spend their day in large airy halls under the care of women possessing the knowledge, the training, and the temperament required for making young children happy. The wives, who at present drudge all day doing wasteful work badly, would be set free to earn their living outside the home.** The benefit of such a system to the mothers, and still more to the children, would be incalculable. At the Rachel Macmillan nursery school it was found that about 90 per cent. of the children had rickets when they first came, and almost all were cured at the end of

the first year in the school. In the ordinary home the necessary modicum of light and air and good food cannot be provided, whereas all these things can be provided quite cheaply if they are provided for many children at once. The freedom to cause one's children to grow up stunted and crippled on the ground that one is too fond of them to part with them is a freedom which is certainly not in the public interest." - 219

This very same idea was put into action by Mao Zedong and the Communist Chinese during their "Great Leap Forward". This was another step towards creating a truly global scientific society. The below quote is from historian Carroll Quigley in his 1966 book *Tragedy and Hope: A History of the World in Our Time* [2]:

"The third stage of agrarian reform, constituting the basic feature of the "Great Leap Forward," merged the 750 thousand collective farms into about 26,000 agrarian communes of about 5,000 families each. This was a **social** rather than simply an agrarian revolution, since its **aims included the destruction of the family household and the peasant village**. All activities of the members, **including child rearing, education, entertainment, social life, the militia, and all economic and intellectual life came under the control of the commune**. In some areas the previous villages were destroyed and the peasants were housed in dormitories, with **communal kitchens and mess halls, nurseries for the children, and separation of these children under the communes' control in isolation from their parents at an early age**. One purpose of this drastic change was to **release large numbers of women from domestic activities so that they could labor in fields or factories**. In the first year of the "Great Leap Forward," 90 million peasant women were relieved of their domestic duties and became available to work for the state. In many cases, factories and craft centers were established in the communes to use this labor, manufacturing goods not only for the commune but for sale in the outside market.

One of the chief aims of this total reorganization of rural life was to make available, for savings and investment, surpluses of agricultural income from the rural sector of Chinese society in order to build up the industrial sector. The regime estimated that it could reverse the pervious division of agricultural incomes, under which 70 percent was consumed by the agricultural population and only 30 percent was available to the non-agricultural sectors of Chinese society. At the same time, it was expected that the communes would totally shatter the resistant social structure of Chinese society, leaving isolated individuals to face the power of the state. Finally, it was expected that these isolated individuals could be mobilized along military lines to carry out agricultural duties in squads and platoons assigned to specific fields and tasks." - 1159

Freedom and Equality in a Scientific Society

The Scientific Outlook Part 7

"There will, of course, be a universal language, which will be either Esperanto or pidgin-English. The literature of the past will for the most part not be translated into this language, since its outlook and emotional background will be considered unsettling: serious students of history will be able to obtain a permit from the Government to study such works as *Hamlet* and *Othello*, but the general public will be forbidden access to them on the ground that they glorify private murder; boys will not be allowed to read books about pirates or Red Indians; love themes will be discouraged on the ground that love, being anarchic, is silly, if not wicked. All this will make life very pleasant for the virtuous." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p214)



Individual Freedom versus the Collective

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"The nineteenth century suffered from a curious division between its political ideas and its economic practice. In politics it carried out the Liberal ideas of Locke and Rousseau, which were adapted to a society of small peasant proprietors. Its watchwords were Liberty and Equality, but meantime it was inventing the technique which is leading the twentieth century to destroy liberty and to replace equality by new forms of oligarchy. The prevalence of Liberal thought has been in some ways a misfortune, since it has prevented men of large vision from thinking out in an impersonal manner the problems raised by industrialism. Socialism and Communism, it is true, are essentially industrial

creeds, but their outlook is so much dominated by the class war that they have little leisure to give to anything but the means of achieving political victory. Traditional morality gives very little help in the modern world. A rich man may plunge millions into destitution by some act which not even the severest Catholic confessor would consider sinful, while he will need absolution for a trivial sexual aberration which, at the worst, has wasted an hour that might have been more usefully employed. **There is need of a new doctrine on the subject of my duty to my neighbour.** It is not only traditional religious teaching that fails to give adequate guidance on this subject, but also the teaching of nineteenth-century Liberalism. Take, for example, such a book as Mill on Liberty. Mill maintains that while the State has a right to interfere with those of my actions that have serious consequences to others, it should leave me free where the effects of my actions are mainly confined to myself. Such a principle, however, in the modern world, leaves hardly any scope for individual freedom. As society becomes more organic, the effects of men upon each other become more and more numerous and important, so that there remains hardly anything in regard to which Mill's defence of liberty is applicable. **Take, for example, freedom of speech and of the Press. It is clear that a society that permits these is thereby precluded from various achievements which are possible to a society that forbids them.** In time of war this is obvious to everybody, because in war-time the national purpose is simple, and the causation involved is obvious. Hitherto it has not been customary for a nation in peace-time to have any national purpose except the preservation of its territory and its constitution. A government which, like that of Soviet Russia, has a purpose in peace-time as ardent and definite as that of other nations in war-time, is compelled to curtail freedom of speech and of the Press as much while it is at peace as other nations do when they are at war.

The diminution of individual liberty which has been taking place during the last twenty years is likely to continue, since it has two continuing causes. On the one hand, modern technique makes society more organic; on the other hand, modern sociology makes men more and more aware of the causal laws in virtue of which one man's acts are useful or harmful to another man. **If we are to justify any particular form of individual liberty in the scientific society of the future, we shall have to do it on the ground that that form of liberty is for the good of society as a whole,** but not in most cases on the ground that the acts concerned affect nobody but the agent." 216

"The man who dreams of a scientifically organized world and wishes to translate his dream into practice finds himself faced with many obstacles. **There is the opposition of inertia and habit: people wish to continue behaving as they always have behaved, and living as they always have lived.** There is the opposition of vested interest: an economic system inherited from feudal times gives advantages to men who have done nothing to deserve them, and these men, being rich and powerful, are able to place formidable obstacles in the way of fundamental change. In addition to these forces, there are also hostile idealisms. Christian ethics is in certain fundamental respects opposed to the scientific ethic which is gradually growing up. Christianity emphasizes the importance of the individual soul, and is not prepared to sanction the sacrifice of an innocent man for the sake of some ulterior good to the majority. Christianity, in a word, is unpolitical, as is natural since it grew up among men devoid of political power. **The new**

ethic which is gradually growing in connexion with scientific technique will have its eye upon society rather than upon the individual. It will have little use for the superstition of guilt and punishment, but will be prepared to make individuals suffer for the public good without inventing reasons purporting to show that they deserve to suffer. In this sense it will be ruthless, and according to traditional ideas immoral, **but the change will have come about naturally through the habit of viewing society as a whole rather than as a collection of individuals.** We view a human body as a whole, and if, for example, it is necessary to amputate a limb we do not consider it necessary to prove first that the limb is wicked. We consider the good of the whole body a quite sufficient argument. Similarly the man who thinks of society as a whole will sacrifice a member of society for the good of the whole, without much consideration for that individual's welfare. This has always been the practice in war, because war is a collective enterprise. Soldiers are exposed to the risk of death for the public good, although no one suggests that they deserve death. But men have not hitherto attached the same importance to social purposes other than war, and have therefore shrunk from inflicting sacrifices which were felt to be unjust. **I think it probable that the scientific idealists of the future will be free from this scruple, not only in time of war, but in time of peace also.** In overcoming the difficulties of the opposition that they will encounter, they will find themselves organized into an oligarchy of opinion such as is formed by the Communist Party in the U.S.S.R." - 233

Freedom in a Scientific Society

"In suggesting any curtailment of liberty there are always two quite distinct questions to be considered. The first is whether such a curtailment would be in the public interest if it were wisely carried out, and the second is whether it will be in the public interest when it is carried out with a certain measure of ignorance and perversity. These two questions are in theory quite distinct, but from the point of view of the government the second question does not exist, since every government believes itself entirely free from both ignorance and perversity. Every government, consequently, in so far as it is not restrained by traditional prejudices, will advocate more interference with liberty than is wise. When, therefore, as in this chapter, we are considering what interferences with liberty might be theoretically justified, we must hesitate to draw the conclusion that they should be advocated in practice. I think it probable, however, that **almost all interferences with liberty for which there is a theoretical justification will, in time, be carried out in practice, because scientific technique is gradually making governments so strong that they need not consider outside opinion.** The result of this will be that governments will be able to interfere with individual liberty wherever in their opinion there is a sound reason for so doing, and for the reason just given, this will be much more often than it should be. For this reason scientific technique is likely to lead to a governmental tyranny which may in time prove disastrous." - 223

"Let us take some examples of traditional principles which appear no longer defensible. [...] To take a more important illustration: consider the immense sums of money that are spent on advertising. It cannot possibly be maintained that these bring any but the most meagre return to the community. The principle of permitting each capitalist to invest his

money as he chooses is not, therefore, socially defensible." - 218

"Take again the question of work, both the kind of work and the method of performing it. At present young people choose their own trade or profession, usually because at the moment of their choice it seems to afford a good opening. A well-informed person possessed of foresight might know that the particular line in question was going to be much less profitable a few years hence. In such a case some public guidance to the young might prove extremely useful. And as regards technical methods, it is seldom in the public interest that an antiquated or wasteful technique should be allowed to persist when a more economical technique is known. At present, owing to the irrational character of the capitalist system, the interest of the individual wage-earner is very often opposed to the interest of the community, since economical methods may cause him to lose his job. This is due to the survival of capitalistic principles in a society which has grown so organic that it ought not to tolerate them. It is obvious that in a well-organized community it should be impossible for a large body of individuals to profit by preserving an inefficient technique. It is clear that the use of the most efficient technique should be enforced, and no wage-earner should be allowed to suffer by its enforcement." - 220

"I come now to a matter which touches the individual more intimately: I mean the question of propagation. It has hitherto been considered that any man and woman not within the prohibited degrees have a right to marry, and having married have a right, if not a duty, to have as many children as nature may decree. **This is a right which the scientific society of the future is not likely to tolerate.** In any given state of industrial and agricultural technique there is an optimum density of population which ensures a greater degree of material well-being than would result from either an increase or a diminution of numbers. As a general rule, except in new countries, the density of population has been beyond this optimum, though perhaps France, in recent decades, has been an exception. Except where there is property to be inherited, the member of a small family suffers almost as much from over-population as the member of a large family. Those who cause over-population are therefore doing an injury not only to their own children, but to the community. It may therefore be assumed that society will discourage them if necessary, as soon as religious prejudices no longer stand in the way of such action. The same question will arise in a more dangerous form as between different nations and different races. If a nation finds that it is losing military superiority through a lower birth-rate than that of a rival, it may attempt, as has already been done in such cases, to stimulate its own birth-rate; but when this proves ineffective, as it probably will, there will be a tendency to demand a limitation in the birth-rate of the rival nation. **An international government, if it ever comes into being, will have to take account of such matters, and just as there is at present a quota of national immigrants into the United States, so in future there will be a quota of national immigrants into the world. Children in excess of the licensed figure will presumably be subjected to infanticide. This would be less cruel than the present method, which is to kill them by war or starvation.** I am, however, only prophesying a certain future, not advocating it.

Quality as well as quantity of population is likely to become a matter for public

regulation. Already in many States of America it is permissible to sterilized the mentally defective, and a similar proposal in England is in the domain of practical politics. This is only the first step. As time goes on we may expect a greater and greater percentage of the population to be regarded as mentally defective from the point of view of parenthood. However that may be, it is clear that the parents who have a child when there is every likelihood of its being mentally defective are doing a wrong both to the child and to the community. No defensible principle of liberty therefore stands in the way of preventing them from such behaviour." - 221

Equality in a Scientific Society

"Equality, like liberty, is difficult to reconcile with scientific technique, since this involves a great apparatus of experts and officials inspiring and controlling vast organizations. **Democratic forms may be preserved in politics, but they will not have as much reality as in a community of small peasant proprietors.** Officials unavoidably have power. And where many vital questions are so technical that the ordinary man cannot hope to understand them, experts must inevitably acquire a considerable measure of control. Take the question of currency and credit as an example. William Jennings Bryan, it is true, made currency an electoral issue in 1896, **but the men who voted for him were men who would have voted for him whatever issue he had selected.** At the present time, calculable misery is being caused by a wrong handling of the question of currency and credit, **but it is impossible to submit this question to the electorate except in some passionate and unscientific form;** the only way in which anything can be done is to convince the officials who control the great central banks. So long as these men act honestly and in accordance with tradition, the community cannot control them, since if they are mistaken very few people will know it. To take a less important illustration: everyone who has ever compared British and American methods of handling goods traffic on railways knows that the American methods are infinitely superior. There are no private trucks, and the trucks of the railways are of standard size capable of carrying forty tons. In England everything is higgledy-piggledy and unsystematic, and the use of private trucks causes great waste. If this were put right, freights could be reduced and consumers would benefit, since there would be no obvious gain either to railway companies or to railway workers. If a more uniform system is ever imposed, it will be done not as a result of a democratic demand, but by government officials.

The scientific society will be just as oligarchic under socialism or communism as under capitalism, for even where the forms of democracy exist they cannot supply the ordinary voter with the requisite knowledge, nor enable him to be on the spot at the crucial moment. The men who understand the complicated mechanism of a modern community and who have the habit of initiative and decision must inevitably control the course of events to a very great extent. Perhaps this is even more true in a socialistic State than in any other, for in a socialistic State economic and political power are concentrated in the same hands, and the national organization of the economic life is more complete than in a State where private enterprise exists. Moreover, a socialistic State is likely to have more perfect control than any other over the organs of publicity and propaganda, so

that it will have more power of causing men to know what it wishes known, and not to know what it wishes unknown. Equality, therefore, like liberty, is, I fear, no more than a nineteenth-century dream. The world of the future will contain a governing class, probably not hereditary, but more analogous to the government of the Catholic Church. **And this governing class, as they acquire increasing knowledge and confidence, will interfere more and more with the life of the individual, and will learn more and more the technique of causing this interference to be tolerated.** It may be assumed that their purposes will be excellent, and their conduct honourable; it may be assumed that they will be well informed and industrious; but it cannot, I think, be assumed that they will abstain from the exercise of power merely on the ground that individual initiative is a good thing, or on the ground that **an oligarchy is unlikely to consider the true interests of its slaves**, for men capable of such self-restraint will not rise to positions of power which, except when they are hereditary, **are attained only by those who are energetic and untroubled by doubt.**" - 224

Free Trade and Labour in a Scientific Society

The Scientific Outlook Part 8

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

August 17, 2008



"In the old days it was expected that about half the children in a family would die before they grew up; this involved pain, illness, and sorrow to the mother, often great suffering to the children, and a waste of natural resources in the care of children who never lived to become productive." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p196)

The Scientific Society and the Enlargement of Organization

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Such a state of affairs will have both merits and demerits; more important than either, however, is the fact that nothing less will enable a society imbued with scientific technique to survive. Scientific technique demands organization, and the more it becomes perfected, the larger are the organizations that it demands. Quite apart from war, the present depression has made it evident that an international organization of credit and banking is necessary to the prosperity not only of some countries, but of all. The international organization of industrial production is being rendered necessary by the efficiency of modern methods. Modern industrial plants can easily supply, in many directions, much more than the total needs of the world. The result of this, which should be wealth, is in fact poverty, owing to competition. In the absence of competition, the immensely enhanced productivity of labour would enable men to arrive at a just compromise between leisure and goods: they could choose whether they would work six hours a day and be rich, or four hours a day and enjoy only moderate comfort. The advantages of world-wide organization, both in preventing the waste of economic competition and in removing the danger of war, are so great as to be becoming an essential condition for the survival of societies possessing scientific technique. This argument is overwhelming in comparison with all counterarguments, and renders almost unimportant the question whether life in an organized world State will be more or less satisfactory than life at the present day. For it is only in the direction of an organized world State that the human race can develop unless it abandons scientific technique, and it will not do this except as the result of a cataclysm so severe as to lower the whole level of civilization.

The advantages to be derived from an organized world State are great and obvious. There will be, in the first place, security against war and a saving of almost the whole effort and expense now devoted to competitive armaments: there will be, one must suppose, a single, highly efficient fighting machine, employing mainly aeroplanes and chemical methods of warfare, which will be quite obviously irresistible, and will therefore not be resisted. **The central government may be changed from time to time by a palace revolution, but this will only alter the personnel of the figure-heads, not the essential organization of government.** The central government will, of course, forbid the propaganda of nationalism, by means of which at present anarchy is maintained, and will put in its place a propaganda of loyalty to the world State." - 212

Free Trade

"We have seen that scientific civilization demands world-wide organization if it is to be stable. We have considered the possibility of such an organization in matters of government. We shall now consider it in the economic sphere. At present, production is organized as far as possible nationally by means of tariff walls; every nation tries to produce at home as much as possible of the goods that it consumes. This tendency is on the increase, and even Great Britain, which has hitherto aimed at maximizing its exports by means of Free Trade, appears to be on the point of abandoning this policy in favour of comparative economic isolation.

It is, of course, clear that, from a purely economic point of view, it is wasteful to organize production nationally rather than internationally. It would be an economy if all the motor-cars used throughout the world were manufactured in Detroit. That is to say, a car of given excellence could be produced with less expense of human labour in that case than it can at present. In a world scientifically organized most industrial products would be thus localized. There would be one place for making pins and needles, another place for making scissors and knives, another place for making aeroplanes, and yet another for agricultural machinery. When, if ever, the world government that we have considered comes into being, one of its first tasks will be the international organization of production. Production will no longer be left, as at present, to private enterprise, but will be undertaken solely in accordance with government orders. This is already the case with such things as battleships, because in regard to war efficiency is thought to be important; but in most matters production is left to the chaotic impulses of private manufacturers, who make too much of some things and too little of others, with the result that there is poverty in the midst of unused plenty. The industrial plant at present existing in the world is in many directions far in excess of the world's needs. By eliminating competition and concentrating production in a single concern, all this waste could be avoided.

The control of raw materials is a matter which in any scientific society would be governed by a central authority. At present the important raw materials are controlled by military power. The weak nation possessed of oil soon finds itself under suzerainty of some stronger nation. The Transvaal lost its independence because it contained gold. Raw material ought not to belong to those who, by conquest or diplomacy, have happened to acquire the territory in which they are; **they ought to belong to a world authority which would ration them to those who had the most skill in utilizing them.** Moreover, our present economic system causes everybody to be wasteful of raw materials, since there is no motive for foresight. In a scientific world the supply of any vital raw material will be carefully estimated, and as the moment of its exhaustion approaches scientific research will be directed to the discovery of a substitute.

Agriculture, for reasons which we considered in an earlier chapter, may have less importance in the future than it has at present, and has had in the past. We shall have not only artificial silk but artificial wool and artificial timber and artificial rubber. In time we may have artificial food. But in the meantime agriculture will become more and more industrialized, both in its methods and in the mentality of those who practise it. American

and Canadian agriculturists have already the industrial mentality, not the mentality of the patient peasant. Machinery will, of course, be increasingly employed. In the neighbourhood of large urban markets intensive cultivation with artificial methods of warming the soil will yield many crops every year. Here and there throughout the country-side there will be large power stations forming the nucleus around which the population will cluster. Of agricultural mentality, as it has been known since ancient times, nothing will survive, since the soil and even the climate will be subject to human control." - 239

Labour in a Scientific Society

"The gain from an economic point of view will be enormous: there will be no waste in competitive production, no uncertainty as to employment, no poverty, no sudden alternations of good and bad times; **every man willing to work will be kept in comfort, and every man unwilling to work will be kept in prison.** When owing to any circumstances the work upon which a man has hitherto been employed is no longer required, he will be taught some new kind of work, and will be adequately maintained while he is learning his new trade. **Economic motives will be employed to regulate population, which will probably be kept stationary.** Almost all that is tragic in human life will be eliminated, and even death will seldom come before old age." - 213

"It may be assumed that every man and woman will be obliged to work, and will be taught a new trade if for any reason work at the old trade is no longer required. The pleasantest work, of course, will be that which gives the most control over the mechanism. The posts giving most power will presumably be awarded to the ablest men as a result of intelligence tests. For entirely inferior work negroes will be employed wherever possible. One may, I suppose, assume that the most desirable kinds of work will be more highly paid than the less desirable kinds, since they require more skill. The society will not be one in which there is equality, although I doubt whether the inequalities will be hereditary except as between different races, i.e., between white and coloured labour. Everybody will be comfortable, and those who occupy the better-paid posts will be able to enjoy considerable luxury. There will not be, as at present, fluctuations of good and bad times, for these are merely the result of our anarchic economic system. Nobody will starve, and nobody will suffer the economic anxieties which at present beset rich and poor alike. On the other hand, life will be destitute of adventure except for the most highly paid experts. Ever since civilization began men have been seeking security more avidly than they have sought anything else. In such a world they will have it, but I am not quite sure whether they will think it worth the price that they will have paid for it." - 242

"Take again the question of work, both the kind of work and the method of performing it. At present young people choose their own trade or profession, usually because at the moment of their choice it seems to afford a good opening. A well-informed person possessed of foresight might know that the particular line in question was going to be much less profitable a few years hence. In such a case some public guidance to the young might prove extremely useful. And as regards technical methods, it is seldom in the

public interest that an antiquated or wasteful technique should be allowed to persist when a more economical technique is known. At present, owing to the irrational character of the capitalist system, the interest of the individual wage-earner is very often opposed to the interest of the community, since economical methods may cause him to lose his job. This is due to the survival of capitalistic principles in a society which has grown so organic that it ought not to tolerate them. It is obvious that in a well-organized community it should be impossible for a large body of individuals to profit by preserving an inefficient technique. It is clear that the use of the most efficient technique should be enforced, and no wage-earner should be allowed to suffer by its enforcement." - 220

Two Examples of Scientifically Created Artificial Societies: Japan and Soviet Russia

The Scientific Outlook Part 9

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

August 24, 2008



"No sharp line can be drawn between scientific technique and traditional arts and crafts. The essential characteristic of scientific technique is the utilization of natural forces in ways not evident to the totally uninstructed." - Bertrand Russell, 1931 (p137)

From *The Scientific Outlook*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"As we approach modern times, the changes deliberately brought about in social structure become greater. This is especially the case where revolutions are concerned. The American Revolution and the French Revolution deliberately created certain societies with certain characteristics, but in the main these characteristics were political, and their effects in other directions formed no part of the primary intentions of the revolutionaries. But scientific technique has so enormously increased the power of governments that it has now become possible to produce much more profound and intimate changes in social structure than any that were contemplated by Jefferson or Robespierre. Science first taught us to create machines; it is now teaching us by Mendelian breeding and experimental embryology to create new plants and animals. There can be little doubt that similar methods will before long give us power, within wide limits, to create new human individuals differing in predetermined ways from the individuals produced by unaided nature. And by means of psychological and economic technique it is becoming possible to create societies as artificial as the steam engine, and as different from anything that would grow up of its own accord without deliberate intention on the part of human agents.

Such artificial societies will, of course, until social science is much more perfected than it is at present, have many unintended characteristics, even if their creators succeed in giving them all the characteristics that were intended. The unintended characteristics may easily prove more important than those that were foreseen, and may cause the artificially constructed societies to break down in one way or another. But I do not think it is open to doubt that the artificial creation of societies will continue and increase so long as scientific technique persists. The pleasure in planned construction is one of the most powerful motives in men who combine intelligence with energy; whatever can be constructed according to a plan, such men will endeavour to construct. So long as the technique for creating a new type of society exists there will be men seeking to employ this technique. They are likely to suppose themselves actuated by some idealistic motive, and it is possible that such motives may play a part in determining what sort of society they shall aim at creating. But the desire to create is not itself idealistic, since it is a form of the love of power, and while the power to create exists there will be men desirous of using this power even if unaided nature would produce a better result than any that can be brought about by deliberate intention." - 204

"There are in the world at the present time two Powers which illustrate the possibility of artificial creation. The two Powers in question are Japan and Soviet Russia." - 206

Japan

"Modern Japan [1930] is almost exactly what it was intended to be by the men who made the revolution in 1867. This is one of the most remarkable political achievements in all history, in spite of the fact that the purpose which inspired the innovators was simple and

such as every Japanese might be expected to sympathize with. The purpose was, in fact, nothing more recondite than the preservation of national independence. China had been found impotent to resist the Western Powers, and Japan appeared to be in like case. Certain Japanese statesman perceived that the military and naval power of the Western nations rested upon Western education and Western industrial technique. They decided to introduce both, with such modifications as Japanese history and circumstances demanded. But whereas industrialism had grown up in the West with very little assistance from the State, and scientific knowledge had developed very far before the Western Governments undertook the task of universal education, Japan, being pressed for time, was obliged to impose education and science and industrialism by governmental pressure. **It was clearly impossible to effect so great a change in the mentality of the average citizen by mere appeals to reason and self-interest. The reformers, therefore, skilfully enlisted the divine person of the Mikado and the divine authority of the Shinto religion on the side of modern science. The Mikado had been for centuries obscure and unimportant, but he had already been restored to power once before in the year A.D. 645, so that there was a precedent of respectable antiquity for what was being done.** The Shinto religion, unlike Buddhism, was indigenous to Japan, but had been for ages thrust into the background by the foreign religion imported from China and Korea. **The reformers very wisely decided that in introducing Christian military technique they would not attempt to introduce the theology with which it had hitherto been correlated, but would have a nationalistic theology of their own, Shinto, as now taught by the State in Japan, is a powerful weapon of nationalism; its gods are Japanese, and its cosmogony teaches that Japan was created sooner than other countries. The Mikado is descended from the Sun Goddess, and is therefore superior to the mere earthly rulers of other States. Shinto, as now taught, is so different from the old indigenous beliefs that competent students have described it as a new religion. As a result of this skilful combination of enlightened technique with unenlightened theology, the Japanese have succeeded not merely in repelling the Western menace, but in becoming one of the Great Powers and achieving the third place on the sea.**

Japan has shown extraordinary sagacity in the adaptation of science to political needs. Science as an intellectual force is sceptical and somewhat destructive of social coherence, while as a technical force it has precisely the opposite qualities. The technical developments due to science have increased the size and intensity of organizations, and have more particularly greatly augmented the power of Governments. **Governments have, therefore, good reason to be friendly to science, so long as it can be kept from dangerous and subversive speculations. In the main the men of science have shown themselves amenable. The State favours one set of superstitions in Japan, and another in the West, but the scientists both in Japan and of the West have, with some exceptions, been willing to acquiesce in governmental doctrines, because most of them are citizens first, and servants of truth only in the second place.**

In spite of the extraordinary success of Japanese policy, there are certain unintended effects which are likely in time to cause serious difficulties. The sudden change of habits and of conscious opinions has induced a certain nervous strain, at any rate in the urban

part of the population. This may produce a tendency to hysteria in time of national stress; indeed, such a tendency was shown in the massacres of Koreans that occurred after the earthquake of Tokio. What is more serious, the position of Japan demands the growth of both industrialism and armaments. Owing to the expense of the latter the industrial workers are poor; they tend, consequently, to acquire a rebellious mentality, and the circumstances of their work make it difficult for them to preserve that close family organization upon which Japanese society is built. If Japan should become engaged in an unsuccessful war, these stances might produce a revolution analogous to the Russian Revolution. **The present social structure in Japan is likely therefore in time to become unstable, but it may be that the same skill which has rendered possible the triumphant career of Japan throughout the last seventy years will enable the Japanese to adapt themselves to changing circumstances gradually without any violent upheaval.** The one thing that seems fairly certain is that, whether gradually or by revolution, the social structure in Japan will have to be profoundly modified. Remarkable as it is, therefore, it is not a perfect example of scientific construction. I do not mean by this that it could have been bettered at the time, but only that it is not in all respects a model for the future." - 206

Soviet Russia

"The attempt at scientific construction which is being made by the Soviet Government is more ambitious than that which was carried through by the Japanese innovators in 1867; it aims at a much greater change in social institutions, and at the creation of a society far more different from anything previously known than is that of Japan. The experiment is still in progress, and only a rash man would venture to predict whether it will succeed or fail; the attitude both of friends and enemies towards it has been singularly unscientific. For my part, I am not anxious to appraise the good or evil in the Soviet system, **but merely to point out those elements of deliberate planning which make it so far the most complete example of a scientific society. In the first place, all the major factors of production and distribution are controlled by the State; in the second place, all education is designed to stimulate activity in support of the official experiment; in the third place, the State does what it can to substitute its religion for the various traditional beliefs which have existed within the territory of the U.S.S.R.; in the fourth place, literature and the Press are controlled by the Government, and are such as are thought likely to help it in its constructive purposes; in the fifth place, the family, in so far as it represents a loyalty which competes with loyalty to the State, is being gradually weakened; in the sixth place, the Five Year Plan is bending the whole constructive energies of the nation to the realization of a certain economic balance and productive efficiency, by means of which it is hoped that a sufficient degree of material comfort will be secured for everyone.** In every other society of the world there is enormously less central direction than under the Soviet Government. It is true that during the war the energies of the nations were, to a considerable extent, centrally organized, but everyone knew that this was temporary, and even at its height the organization was not so all-pervasive as it is in Russia. The Five Year Plan, as its name implies, is supposed to be temporary, and to belong to a time of stress not wholly unlike that of the Great War, but it is to be expected that if it succeeds, other plans will take its

place, since the central organization of the vast nation's activities is too attractive to the organizers to be abandoned readily.

The Russian experiment may succeed or may fail, but even if it fails, it will be followed by others which will share its most interesting characteristic, namely, the unitary direction of a whole nation's activities. **This was impossible in earlier days, since it depends upon the technique of propaganda, i.e., upon universal education, newspapers, the cinema, and the wireless.** The State had already been strengthened by railways and the telegraph, which made possible the rapid transmission of news and concentration of troops. In addition to modern methods of propaganda, modern methods of warfare have strengthened the State as against discontented elements; aeroplanes and poison gasses have made revolt difficult unless it obtains the support of aeronauts and chemists. Any prudent Government will favour these two classes and take pains to secure their loyalty. As the example of Russia has shown, it is now possible for men of energy and intelligence, if they once become possessed of the governmental machine, to retain power even though at first they may have to face the opposition of the majority of the population. We must therefore increasingly expect to see government falling into the hands of oligarchies, not of birth but of opinion. **In countries long accustomed to democracy, the empire of these oligarchies may be concealed behind democratic forms, as was that of Augustus in Rome, but elsewhere their rule will be undisguised.** If there is to be scientific experimentation in the construction of new kinds of societies, the rule of an oligarchy of opinion is essential. It may be expected that there will be conflicts between different oligarchies, but that ultimately some one oligarchy will acquire world dominion, and will produce a world-wide organization as complete and elaborate as that now existing in the U.S.S.R." - 209

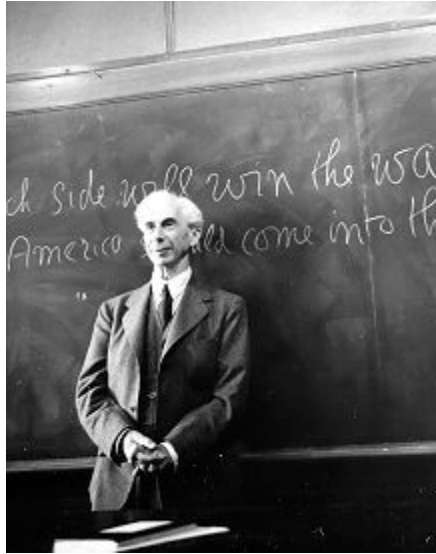


Scientific Technique and the Concentration of Power

The Impact of Science on Society Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

January 14, 2008



"So long as the rulers are comfortable, what reason have they to improve the lot of their serfs?"- Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p61)

Bertrand Russell in his 1952 book *The Impact of Science on Society** describes the effects of "scientific technique" on the increasing control of societies by an ever shrinking number of people. As we will see, "scientific technique" is much more than just the development and widespread use of new technology, but first some of its effects.

Bertrand Arthur William Russell, 3rd Earl Russell (1872-1970) was a renowned British philosopher and mathematician who was an adamant internationalist and worked extensively on the education of young children. He was the founder of the [Pugwash movement](#) which used the spectre of Cold War nuclear annihilation to push for world government. Among many other prizes, Russell was awarded the [Nobel Prize in Literature](#) in 1950 and UNESCO's (United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization) [Kalinga prize](#) in 1957.

Increasing Organization

From *Impact of Science on Society*:

"This [the telegraph] had two important consequences: first messages could now travel faster than human beings; secondly, in large organizations detailed control from a centre became much more possible than it had formerly been.

The fact that messages could travel faster than human beings was useful, above all, to the police..." - 33

"Electricity as a source of power is much more recent than the telegraph, and has not yet

had all the effects of which it is capable. As an influence on social organisation its most notable feature is the importance of power stations, which inevitably promote centralisation... as soon as a community has become dependent upon them for lighting and heating and cooking. I lived in America in a farm-house which depended entirely upon electricity, and sometimes, in a blizzard, the wires would be blown down. The resulting inconvenience was almost intolerable. If we had been deliberately cut off for being rebels, we should soon have had to give in." - 35

"But what is of most importance in this connection is the development of flying. Aeroplanes have increased immeasurably the power of governments. No rebellion can hope to succeed unless it is favoured by at least a portion of the air force." - 36

"In industry, the integration brought about by **scientific technique** is much greater [than agriculture] and more intimate.

One of the most obvious results of industrialism is that a much larger percentage of the population live in towns than was formerly the case. The town dweller is a more social being than the agriculturist, and is much more influenced by discussion. In general, he works in a crowd, and his amusements are apt to take him into still larger crowds. The course of nature, the alternations of day and night, summer and winter, wet or shine, make little difference to him; he has no occasion to fear that he will be ruined by frost or drought or sudden rain. What matters to him is his human environment, and his place in various organisations especially.

Take a man who works in a factory, and consider how many organisations affect his life. There is first of all the factory itself, and any larger organisation of which it may be a part. Then there is the man's trade union and his political party. He probably gets house room from a building society or public authority. His children go to school. If he reads a newspaper or goes to a cinema or looks at a football match, **these things are provided by powerful organisations**. Indirectly, through his employers, he is dependent upon those from whom they buy their raw material and those to whom they sell their finished product. Above all, there is the State, which taxes him and may at any moment order him to go and get killed in war, in return for which it protects him against murder and theft so long as there is peace, and allows him to buy a fixed modicum of food." [emphasis mine] - 44

"The increase of organisation has brought into existence new positions of power. Every body has to have executive officials, in whom, at any moment, its power is concentrated. It is true that officials are usually subject to control, but the control may be slow and distant. From the young lady who sells stamps in a Post Office all the way up to the Prime Minister, **every official is invested, for the time being, with some part of the power of the State**. You can complain of the young lady if her manners are bad, and you can vote against the Prime Minister at the next election if you disapprove of his policy. But both the young lady and the Prime Minister can have a very considerable run for their money before (if ever) your discontent has any effect." [emphasis mine] - 45

"The increased power of officials is an inevitable result of the greater degree of organisation that **scientific technique** brings about. It has the drawback that it is apt to be irresponsible, behind-the-scenes, power, like that of Emperors' eunuchs and Kings' mistresses in former times. To discover ways of controlling it is one of the most important political problems of our time. Liberals protested, successfully, against the power of kings and aristocrats; socialists protested against the power of capitalists. But **unless the power of officials can be kept within bounds, socialism will mean little more than the substitution of one set of masters for another**: all the former power of the capitalist will be inherited by the official. [emphasis mine]" - 47

"As we have seen, the question of freedom needs a completely fresh examination. There are forms of freedom that are desirable, and that are gravely threatened; there are other forms of freedom that are undesirable, but that are very difficult to curb... The resultant two-fold problem, of preserving liberty internally and diminishing it externally, is one that the world must solve, and solve soon, if scientific societies are to survive.

Let us consider for a moment the social psychology involved in this situation.

...The armed forces of one's own nation exist - so each nation asserts - to prevent aggression by other nations. But the armed forces of other nations exist - or so many people believe - to promote aggression. If you say anything against the armed forces of your own country, you are a traitor, wishing to see your fatherland ground under the heel of a brutal conqueror. If, on the other hand, you defend a potential enemy State for thinking armed forces necessary to its safety, you malign your own country, whose unalterable devotion to peace only perverse malice could lead you to question...

And so it comes about that, **whenever an organisation has a combatant purpose, its members are reluctant to criticise their officials** and tend to acquiesce in usurpations and arbitrary exercise of power which, but for the war mentality, they would bitterly resent. **It is the war mentality that gives officials and governments their opportunity. It is therefore only natural that officials and governments are prone to foster war mentality.**" [emphasis mine] - 51

"I incline to think that 'liberty', as the word was understood in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, is no longer quite the right concept; I should prefer to substitute 'opportunity for initiative'. And my reason for suggesting this change is the character of a scientific society." - 68

More Organization is More Power

"The effect of the telegraph was to increase the power of the central government and diminish the initiative of distant subordinates. This applied not only to the State, but to every geographically extensive organization. We shall find a great deal of **scientific technique** has a similar effect. The result is that fewer men have executive power, but those few had more power than such men had formerly." [emphasis mine] - 35

"We have seen that **scientific technique** increases the importance of organisations, and therefore the extent to which authority impinges upon the life of the individual. It follows that a scientific oligarchy has more power than any oligarchy could have in pre-scientific times. There is a tendency, which is inevitable unless consciously combated, for organisations to coalesce, and so to increase in size, until, ultimately, **almost all become merged in the State**. A scientific oligarchy, accordingly, is bound to become what is called 'totalitarian', that is to say, all important forms of power will become a monopoly of the State." [emphasis mine] - 56

"In the first place, since the new oligarchs are the adherents of a certain creed, and base their claim to exclusive power upon the rightness of this creed, their system depends essentially upon dogma: whoever questions the governmental dogma questions the moral authority of the government, and is therefore a rebel. While the oligarchy is still new, there are sure to be other creeds, held with equal conviction, which must be suppressed by force, since the principle of majority rule has been abandoned. It follows that there cannot be freedom of the Press, freedom of discussion, or freedom of book publication. There must be an organ of government whose duty it is to pronounce as to what is orthodox, and to punish heresy. The history of the Inquisition shows what such an organ of government must inevitably become. In the normal pursuit of power, it will seek out more and more subtle heresies. The Church, as soon as it acquired political power, developed incredible refinement of dogma, and persecuted what to us appear microscopic deviations from the official creed. Exactly the same sort of thing happens in the modern States that confine political power to supporters of a certain doctrine." - 57

"The completeness of the resulting control over opinion depends in various ways upon **scientific technique**. Where all children go to school, and all schools are controlled by the government, the authorities can close the minds of the young to everything contrary to official orthodoxy. Printing is impossible without paper, and all paper belongs to the State. Broadcasting and the cinema are equally public monopolies. The only remaining possibility of unauthorised propaganda is by secret whispers from one individual to another. But this, in turn, is rendered appallingly dangerous by improvements in the art of spying. Children at school are taught that it is their duty to denounce their parents if they allow themselves subversive utterances in the bosom of the family. No one can be sure that a man who seems to be his dearest friend will not denounce him to the police; the man may himself have been in some trouble, and may know that if he is not efficient as a spy his wife and children will suffer. All this is not imaginary, it is daily and hourly reality. **Nor, given oligarchy, is there the slightest reason to expect anything else.**" [emphasis mine] - 58

What is Scientific Technique?

Scientific technique is much more than just the impact of new technology on the machinations of society. It is the use of science, in its most calculating and inhumane ways, to analyze, control and guide societies in a desired direction. This topic was elaborated on in a couple of talks given by [Alan Watt](#) ([here](#) and [here](#)) particularly through the writings of Jacques Ellul.

The rest of the articles in this series will also elaborate on other aspects of scientific technique, especially its application to [education](#) and [human breeding](#). But first, I will examine Bertrand Russell's views about the [stability of scientific societies](#) and the possibility of a scientific world government.

*Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN0-415-10906-X

Note: I first heard about this book from talks given by Alan Watt at [Cutting Through The Matrix.com](#), an individual well worth looking into.

Limits to the Stability of a Scientific World Empire

The Impact of Science on Society Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](#)
January 21, 2008



"I do not believe that dictatorship is a lasting form of scientific society - unless (but this proviso is important) it can become world-wide."- Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p67)

According to Bertrand Russell's 1952 book *The Impact of Science on Society** empires of the past were unable to sustain their control over ever distant regions of their dominion mostly due to the difficulty of maintaining effective centralized control over the actions

of their subordinates. Scientific technique has removed this limitation. The only remaining obstacle to the creation of a truly worldwide empire is the establishment of a unifying principle to replace the fear of war.

Limits to the Size of an Empire

From *The Impact of Science on Society*:

"In any given state of technique there is a limit to size. The Roman Empire was stopped by German forests and African deserts... And before the telegraph large empires tended to break up because they could not be effectively controlled from the centre.

Communications have been hitherto the chief factor limiting the size of empires... This difficulty was diminished by railways and the telegraph, and is on the point of disappearing with the improvement of the long-range bomber. There would now be **no technical difficulty about a single world-wide Empire**. Since war is likely to become more destructive to human life than it has been in recent centuries, **unification under a single world government is probably necessary** unless we are to acquiesce in either a return to barbarism or the extinction of the human race." [emphasis mine] - 36

"I think the evils that have grown up in Soviet Russia will exist, in a greater or less degree, wherever there is a scientific government which is securely established and is not dependent upon popular support. It is possible nowadays for a government to be very much more oppressive than any government could be before there was scientific technique. Propaganda makes persuasion easier for the government; public ownership of halls and paper makes counter-propaganda more difficult; and the effectiveness of modern armaments makes popular risings impossible. **No revolution can succeed in a modern country unless it has the support of at least a considerable section of the armed forces. But the armed forces can be kept loyal by being given a higher standard of life than that of the average worker, and this is made easier by every step in the degradation of ordinary labour.** Thus the very evils of the system help to give it stability. Apart from external pressure, there is no reason why such a regime should not last for a very long time." [emphasis mine] - 61

War, the Chief Source of Social Cohesion

"What stands in the way [of world government]? Not physical or technical obstacles, but only the evil passions in human minds..." - 108

"...so long as there is imminent risk of war it is impossible to escape from the authority of the State except to a very limited degree. It is mainly war that has caused the excessive power of modern States, and until the fear of war is removed it is inevitable that everything should be subordinated to short-term efficiency. But I have thought it worth while to think for a moment of the world as it may be when a world government has ended the present nightmare dread of war." - 75

"War has been, throughout history, the chief source of social cohesion; and since science began, it has been the strongest incentive to technical progress. Large groups have a better chance of victory than small ones, and therefore the usual result of war is to make States larger...

There is, it must be confessed, **a psychological difficulty about a single world government**. The chief source of social cohesion in the past, I repeat, has been war: the passions that inspire a feeling of unity are hate and fear. **These depend upon the existence of an enemy, actual or potential**. It seems to that a world government could only be kept in being by force, not by the spontaneous loyalty that now inspires a nation at war." [emphasis mine] - 36

World Government

"As regards war, the principle of unrestricted national sovereignty, cherished by liberals in the nineteenth century and by the Kremlin in the present day, must be abandoned. Means must be found of subjecting the relations of nations to the rule of law, so that a single nation will no longer be, as at present, the judge in its own cause. If this is not done, the world will quickly return to barbarism. In that case, scientific technique will disappear along with science, and men will be able to go on being quarrelsome because their quarrels will no longer do much harm. It is, however, just possible that mankind may prefer to survive and prosper rather than to perish in misery, and, if so, national liberty will have to be effectively restrained." - 50

"In the past, there were many sovereign States, any two of which might at any time quarrel. Attempts in the line of the League of Nations were bound to fail, because, when a dispute arose, the disputants were too proud to accept outside arbitration, and the neutrals were too lazy to enforce it. Now there are only two sovereign States: Russia (with satellites) and the United States (with satellites). If either becomes preponderant, either by victory or by an obvious military superiority, the preponderant Power can establish a single Authority over the whole world, and thus make future wars impossible. At first this Authority will, in certain regions, be based on force, but if the Western nations are in control, force will as soon as possible give way to consent. When that has been achieved, the most difficult of world problems will have been solved, and science can become wholly beneficent." - 106

"There are three ways of securing a society that shall be stable as regards population. The first is that of birth control, the second that of infanticide or really destructive wars, and **third that of general misery except for a powerful minority**. All these methods have been practised... the third **in the world as some Western internationalists hope to make it** and in Soviet Russia." [emphasis mine] - 117

"... a scientific world society cannot be stable unless there is a world government... unless there is a world government which secures universal birth control, there must from time to time be great wars, in which the penalty of defeat is widespread death by starvation... Unless, at some stage, one power or group of powers emerges victorious and proceeds to

establish a single government of the world with a monopoly of armed forces, it is clear that the level of civilization must decline until scientific warfare becomes impossible - that is until science is extinct." - 117

This last point is very important because the exact same theme was described by Zbigniew Brzezinski in his book *The Grand Chessboard: American Primacy and Its Geostrategic Imperatives* (1997). Brzezinski outlines his case for how current American global supremacy should be used to unify the world under the dictates of the United Nations. For more about *The Grand Chessboard* [read this](#).

From *The Grand Chessboard*:

"Meeting these challenges is America's burden as well as its unique responsibility. Given the reality of American democracy, an effective response will require generating a public understanding of the continuing importance of American power in shaping a widening framework of stable geopolitical cooperation, one that simultaneously averts global anarchy and successfully deters the emergence of a new power challenge. These two goals-- averting global anarchy and impeding the emergence of a power rival-- are inseparable from **the longer-range definition of the purpose of America's global engagement, namely, that of forging an enduring framework of global geopolitical cooperation.**" [emphasis mine] - 214

"In brief, the U.S. policy goal must be unapologetically twofold: to perpetuate America's own dominant position for at least a generation and preferably longer still; and to create a geopolitical framework that can absorb the inevitable shocks and strains of social-political change while evolving into the geopolitical core of shared responsibility for peaceful **global management**. A prolonged phase of gradually expanding cooperation with key Eurasian partners, both stimulated and arbitrated by America, can also help to foster **the preconditions for an eventual upgrading of the existing and increasingly antiquated UN [United Nations] structures. A new distribution of responsibilities and privileges** can then take into account the changed realities of global power, so drastically different from those of 1945." [emphasis mine] - 215

Conclusion

The next article will examine Bertrand Russell's views on [population control and the scientific breeding of humans](#). The fourth and final part in this series will explore the use of [education as the most powerful form of government propaganda](#).

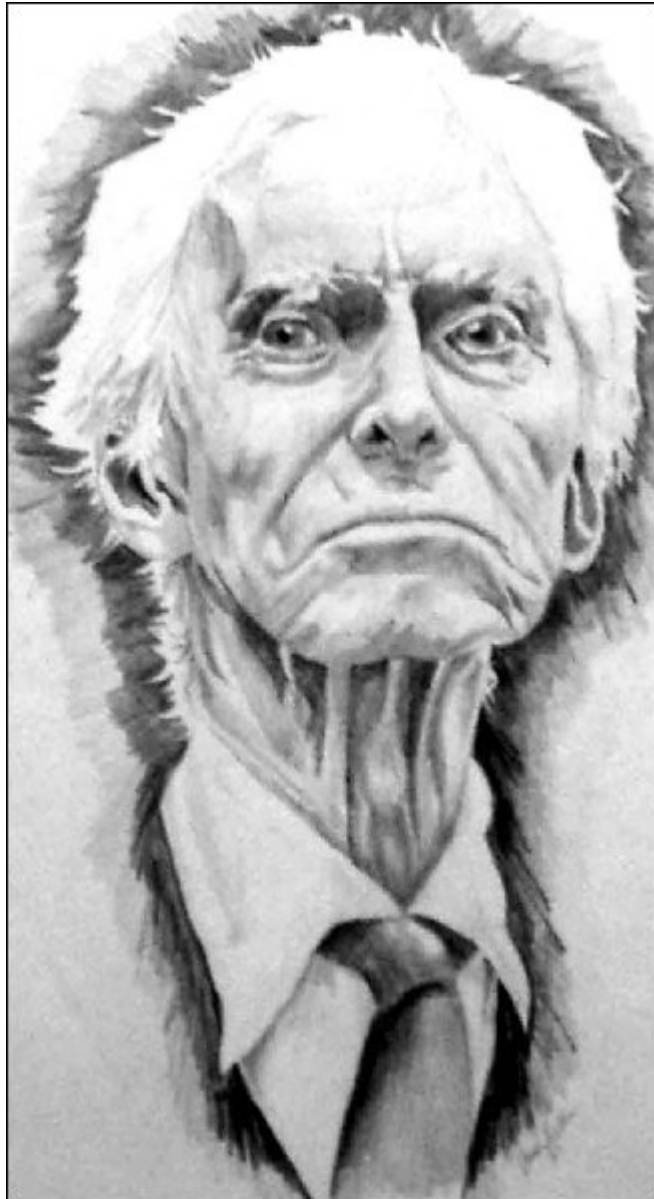
*Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN0-415-10906-X

Population Control and the Scientific Breeding of Humans

The Impact of Science on Society Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

January 28, 2008



"If there is not to be an endless succession of wars, population will have to become stationary throughout the world, and this will probably have to be done, in many countries, as a result of governmental measures. This will require an extension of scientific technique into very intimate matters." - Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p38)

Bertrand Russell in his 1952 book *The Impact of Science on Society** describes a variety of methods that have been and could be used to reduce the population of the world to a more manageable size. Another very interrelated concept of a managed population size is the practice of eugenics. To be more precise, the practice of dysgenics for the commoners and eugenics for the aristocracy. Commoners will be bred to create a "submissive and docile disposition" while the aristocracy will be bred for much different qualities. "Gradually, by selective breeding the congenital differences between rulers and ruled will increase until they become almost different species."

Solutions to Overpopulation

From *The Impact of Science on Society*:

"But bad times, you may say, are exceptional, and can be dealt with by exceptional methods. This has been more or less true unless the increase in population can be enormously diminished. At present the population of the world is increasing at about 58,000 per diem. **War, so far, has had no very great effect on this increase**, which continued throughout each of the world wars." [emphasis mine] - 115

"There are three ways of securing a society that shall be stable as regards population. The first is that of birth control, the second that of infanticide or really destructive wars, and third that of general misery except for a powerful minority." - 117

"The nations which at present increase rapidly should be encouraged to adopt the methods by which, in the West, the increase of population has been checked. **Educational propaganda, with government help**, could achieve this result in a generation." [emphasis mine] - 116

"... a scientific world society cannot be stable unless there is a world government... unless there is a world government which secures universal birth control, there must from time to time be great wars, in which **the penalty of defeat is widespread death by starvation**... Unless, at some stage, one power or group of powers emerges victorious and proceeds to establish a single government of the world with a monopoly of armed forces, it is clear that the level of civilization must decline until scientific warfare becomes impossible - that is until science is extinct." [emphasis mine] - 117

"If raw materials are not to be used up too fast, **there must not be free competition** for their acquisition and use but **an international authority to ration them** in such quantities as may from time to time seem compatible with continued industrial prosperity. And similar considerations apply to soil conservation." [emphasis mine] - 124

"To deal with this problem [increasing population and decreasing food supplies] it will be necessary to find ways of preventing an increase in world population. If this is to be done otherwise than by wars, pestilence, and famines, it will demand a powerful international authority. **This authority should deal out the world's food to the various nations in proportion to their population** at the time of the establishment of the authority. If any

nation subsequently increased its population it **should not on that account receive any more food**. The motive for not increasing population would therefore be very compelling. What method of preventing an increase might be preferred should be left to each state to decide." [emphasis mine] - 124

Eugenics and Dysgenics - The Scientific Breeding of Humans

"**biology, physiology** and psychology are likely in the long run to affect human life quite as much as physics and chemistry." [emphasis mine] - 38

"In any case, it is pretty certain that scientific technique will very soon effect great improvements in the animals and plants that are useful to man.

When such methods of modifying the congenital character of animals and plants have been pursued long enough to make their success obvious, it is probable that there will be a powerful movement for **applying scientific methods to human propagation**. There would at first be strong religious and emotional obstacles to the adoption of such a policy. But suppose (say) Russia were able to overcome these obstacles and to **breed a race stronger, more intelligent, and more resistant to disease than any race of men that has hitherto existed**, and suppose the other nations perceived that unless they followed suit they would be defeated in war, then either the other nations would voluntarily forgo their prejudices, or, after defeat, they would be compelled to forgo them. Any scientific technique, however beastly, is bound to spread if it is useful in war - until such time as men decide that they have had enough of war and will henceforth live in peace. As that day does seem to be at hand, scientific breeding of human beings must be expected to come about." [emphasis mine] - 39

"Scientific societies are as yet in their infancy. It may be worthwhile to spend a few moments in speculating as to possible future developments of those that are oligarchies.

...**Diet, injections**, and injunctions will combine, from a very early age, to produce the sort of character and the sort of beliefs that the authorities consider desirable, and **any serious criticism of the powers that be will become psychologically impossible**. Even if all are miserable, all will believe themselves happy, because the government will tell them that they are so.

A totalitarian government with a scientific bent might do things that to us would seem horrifying. The Nazis were more scientific than the present rulers of Russia, and were more inclined towards the sort of atrocities that I have in mind. They were said - I do not know with what truth - to use prisoners in concentration camps as material for all kinds of experiments, some involving death after much pain. If they had survived, they would probably have soon taken to scientific breeding. Any nation which adopts this practice will, **within a generation, secure great military advantages**. The system, one may surmise, will be something like this: **except possibly in the governing aristocracy**, all but 5 per cent of males and 30 per cent of females will be sterilised. The 30 per cent of females will be expected to spend the years from eighteen to forty in reproduction, in

order to **secure adequate cannon fodder**. As a rule, artificial insemination will be preferred to the natural method. The unsterilised, if they desire the pleasures of love, will usually have to seek them with sterilised partners.

Sires will be chosen for various qualities, **some for muscle others for brains. All will have to be healthy, and unless they are to be the fathers of oligarchs they will have to be of a submissive and docile disposition**. Children will, as in Plato's Republic, be taken from their mothers and reared by professional nurses. **Gradually, by selective breeding the congenital differences between rulers and ruled will increase until they become almost different species. A revolt of the plebs would become as unthinkable as an organised insurrection of sheep against the practice of eating mutton**. (The Aztecs kept a domesticated alien tribe for purposes of cannibalism. Their regime was totalitarian.)

To those accustomed to this system, the family as we know it would seem as queer as the tribal and totem organisation of Australian aborigines seems to us... The labouring class would have such long hours of work and so little to eat that their desires would **hardly extend beyond sleep and food**. The upper class, being deprived of the softer pleasures both by the abolition of the family and by the **supreme duty of devotion to the State**, would acquire the mentality of ascetics: they would care only for power, and in pursuit of it would not shrink from cruelty. By the practice of cruelty men would become hardened, so that worse and worse tortures would be required to give the spectators a thrill."
[emphasis mine] - 61

Conclusion

A very important auxiliary technique involved in creating the "submissive and docile disposition" is education. Bertrand Russell's views on education will be discussed in the following article, entitled [Mass Psychology and Education](#).

*Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN0-415-10906-X

Mass Psychology and Education

The Impact of Science on Society Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

February 4, 2008

"For some reason which I have failed to understand, many people like the system [scientific totalitarianism] when it is Russian but disliked the very same system when it was German. I am compelled to think that this is due to the power of labels; these people like whatever is labelled 'Left' without examining whether the label has any justification."- Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p56)

What exactly is the purpose of education? Does the government want to teach young people how to think and reason for themselves or is it a form of mass psychology aimed at propagandising the young? These questions are examined through Bertrand Russell's 1952 book entitled *The Impact of Science on Society**.



Education, a Modern Method of Propaganda

From Bertrand Russell's *The Impact of Science on Society*:

"I think the subject which will be of most importance politically is mass psychology. Mass psychology is, scientifically speaking, not a very advanced study... This study is immensely useful to practical men, whether they wish to become rich or to acquire the government. It is, of course, as a science, founded upon individual psychology, but hitherto it has employed rule-of-thumb methods which were based upon a kind of intuitive common sense. Its importance has been enormously increased by the growth of **modern methods of propaganda. Of these the most influential is what is called 'education'**. Religion plays a part, though a diminishing one; the Press, the cinema and the radio play an increasing part.

What is essential in mass psychology is the art of persuasion. If you compare a speech of Hitler's with a speech of (say) Edmund Burke, you will see what strides have been made in the art since the eighteenth century. What went wrong formerly was that people had read in books that man is a rational animal, and framed their arguments on this hypothesis. We now know **that limelight and a brass band do more to persuade** than can be done by the most elegant train of syllogisms. It may be **hoped that in time anybody will be able to persuade anybody of anything if he can catch the patient young and is provided by the State with money and equipment.**

This subject will make great strides when it is taken up by scientists under a scientific dictatorship. Anaxagoras maintained that snow is black, but no one believed him. The social psychologists of the future will have a number of classes of school children on whom they will try different methods of producing an unshakeable conviction that snow is black. Various results will soon be arrived at. First, that the influence of home is obstructive. Second, that not much can be done unless indoctrination begins before the age of ten. Third, that verses set to music and repeatedly intoned are very effective. Fourth, that the opinion that snow is white must be held to show a morbid taste for eccentricity. But I anticipate. It is for future scientists to make these maxims precise and discover exactly how much it costs per head to make children believe that snow is black, and how much less it would cost to make them believe it is dark grey." [emphasis mine] - 40

The Intended Result of Education

"The completeness of the resulting control over opinion depends in various ways upon scientific technique. **Where all children go to school, and all schools are controlled by the government, the authorities can close the minds of the young to everything contrary to official orthodoxy.** Printing is impossible without paper, and all paper belongs to the State. Broadcasting and the cinema are equally public monopolies. The only remaining possibility of unauthorised propaganda is by secret whispers from one individual to another. But this, in turn, is rendered appallingly dangerous by improvements in the art of spying. **Children at school are taught that it is their duty to denounce their parents if they allow themselves subversive utterances in the bosom**

of the family. No one can be sure that a man who seems to be his dearest friend will not denounce him to the police; the man may himself have been in some trouble, and may know that if he is not efficient as a spy his wife and children will suffer. All this is not imaginary, it is daily and hourly reality. Nor, given oligarchy, is there the slightest reason to expect anything else." [emphasis mine] - 58

"Scientific societies are as yet in their infancy. It may be worthwhile to spend a few moments in speculating as to possible future developments of those that are oligarchies.

It is to be expected that advances in physiology and psychology will give governments much more control over individual mentality than they now have even in totalitarian countries. Fichte laid it down that **education should aim at destroying free will, so that, after pupils have left school, they shall be incapable, throughout the rest of their lives, of thinking or acting otherwise than as their schoolmasters would have wished.** But in his day this was an unattainable ideal: what he regarded as the best system in existence produced Karl Marx. In future such failures are not likely to occur where there is dictatorship. **Diet, injections, and injunctions will combine, from a very early age, to produce the sort of character and the sort of beliefs that the authorities consider desirable, and any serious criticism of the powers that be will become psychologically impossible.** Even if all are miserable, all will believe themselves happy, because the government will tell them that they are so." [emphasis mine] - 61

That is really worth repeating.

"Diet, injections, and injunctions [a command, admonition, etc.] will combine, from a very early age, to produce the sort of character and the sort of beliefs that the authorities consider desirable, and any serious criticism of the powers that be will become psychologically impossible."

Some Miscellaneous Uses of Education

"...result from the elimination of war [and the establishment of a world government]. A great deal, also, is to be hoped from a change in propaganda. Nationalist propaganda, in any violent form, will have to be illegal, and children in schools will not be taught to hate and despise foreign nations. Active instruction in the evils of the old times and the advantages of the new system would do the rest. I am convinced that only a few psychopaths would wish to return to the daily dread of radioactive disintegration." - 108

"The nations which at present increase [their populations] rapidly should be encouraged to adopt the methods by which, in the West, the increase of population has been checked. **Educational propaganda, with government help, could achieve this result in a generation.**" [emphasis mine] - 116

The idea of using education or rather sex education to reduce the population of the west was further promoted in 1968 by Paul Ehrlich in his book *The Population Bomb***:

"We need a federal law requiring sex education in schools - sex education that includes discussion of the need for regulating the birth rate and of the techniques of birth control. Such education should begin at the earliest age recommended by those with professional competence in this area - certainly before junior high school.

By "sex education" I do not mean course focusing on hygiene or presenting a simple-minded "birds and bees" approach to human sexuality. The reproductive function of sex must be shown as just one of its functions, and one that must be carefully regulated in relation to the needs of the individual and society." - 133

For more on Paul Ehrlich's views on the use of education and other means of population control please read this previous article, [Population, Religion and Sex Education](#).

The Governing Classes Only

Most people reading this article are the products of a state run educational system. If the above is not enough to make you reflect on the merits of universal education and on all of the things you were 'taught' as a child (and since then), hopefully the following quote will.

"Although this science will be diligently studied, **it will be rigidly confined to the governing class. The populace will not be allowed to know how its convictions were generated.** When the technique has been perfected, every government that has been in charge of education for a generation will be able to control its subjects securely without the need of armies or policemen..." [emphasis mine] - 41

*Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN0-415-10906-X

**Quotes from: Paul R. Ehrlich. *The Population Bomb: Revised & Expanded Edition* (1968, 1971). SBN 345-24489-3-150.

Note: I first heard about this book from talks given by Alan Watt at [Cutting Through The Matrix.com](#), an individual well worth looking into.



KNOWLEDGE DRIVEN REVOLUTION

A Darwin's Look into The Next Million Years

The Next Million Years Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

March 3, 2008



Charles Galton Darwin's 1952 book *The Next Million Years* [1] attempts to give a general outline of the "future history" of mankind by using the "law of human nature". C.G. Darwin (1887-1962) was an English physicist and grandson of Charles Darwin of evolutionary fame. Despite being concerned about the over-population of the world he had four sons and one daughter with his wife Katharine Pember. The hypocrisy of this may seem odd, but the concern about over-population only refers to inferior breeds of humans and not superior breeds like himself and his lineage. C.G. Darwin was a long time member and eventual president of the Eugenic Society (1953-59) which represented the belief system held among many of the political, scientific and aristocratic elites of his day and the present.

Why the Next Million Years?

This article will examine some of C.G. Darwin's views of what the next million years of mankind's future history will look like. But first, why such a enormous length of a **million** years of future history?

From *The Next Million Years*:

"... in the evolution of life, how long does it take to make a new species? The answer is a million years. That is the reason for the title I have chosen for this essay - for a million years to come we have got to put up with all the defects in man's nature as it is now." – 78

The Laws of Human Nature

"Nevertheless for all of us it is intolerable to think of the future unfolding itself in complete predestined inevitability for the eternity of a million years. There are two things we must do; one is to know, the other to act. As to knowing, in my introductory chapter I described an analogy in mechanics, and I suggested that it should be possible to discover a set of laws, like the laws of thermodynamics, which would place absolute limits on what can be done by humanity. Biological laws cannot be expected to have the same hard outline as physical laws, but still there are absolute laws limiting what an animal can do, and similar laws will limit man not only on his physical side, but also on his intellectual side. If these could be clearly stated, we should recognize that many attempts that have been made at improving man's estate were hopeless.

It is for others, better versed than I am in the biological sciences, to work out these laws, and it is in all humility that I put forward the basis, on which, it may be, that they could be founded. The first principle is that man, as an animal, obeys the law of variation of species, which condemns human nature to stay nearly constant for a million years. **The perfectibility of mankind, the aim of so many noble spirits, is foredoomed by this principle.** The second is that man is a wild animal, and that doctrines drawn from the observation of domestic animals are quite inapplicable to him. The third principle is the non-inheritance of acquired characters, a principle familiar in animal biology, but all too seldom invoked in connection with human beings. If these, and any further principles as well, or any alternatives to them, were accepted, it might sometimes be possible through them to show up the absurdities of bad statesmanship, and certainly it would be the part of a wise statesman to work within their limitations, because only so could he hope to achieve success." [emphasis mine] - 206

"A history of the future is different from a history of the past, because it cannot in any sense be a narrative. It cannot say what will happen in anything like the same manner as past history says what did happen. All it can do is to say what things will be happening most of the time and in most places, but without being able to specify those times and those places. This it does through consideration of the laws of nature, **chief among which is the law of human nature.**" [emphasis mine] - 167

The Need to Change Human Nature

As a avid eugenicist, C. G. Darwin believed "improvements" in the human species could only come about through the changing of mankind's hereditary nature.

"But there is also the possibility of an internal revolution. This would come about if means were discovered of deliberately altering human nature itself... here it must

suffice to say that the prospects do not seem at all good. There is first the extreme difficulty of making such changes, and the probability that most of them would be for the worse, and secondly, if by chance a revolutionary improvement should arise, it seems all too likely that the rest of mankind would not tolerate the supermen and would destroy them before ever they had the time to multiply. It is mainly the belief that there will be no revolutionary change in human nature that emboldened me to write this essay." [emphasis mine] - 56

"Still for the sake of the distant future something can be attempted more profitable than has been usual hitherto. **Attempts at improving the lot of mankind have all hitherto been directed toward improving his conditions, but not his nature, and as soon as the conditions lapse all is lost.** The only hope is to use our knowledge of biology in such a way that all would not be lost with the lapse of the conditions. The principles of heredity offer an anchor which will permanently fix any gains that there may be in the quality of mankind." [emphasis mine] - 208

"If the history of the future is not regarded as the automatic unfolding of a sequence of uncontrollable events - and few, of us would accept this inevitability - then anyone who has decided what measures are desirable for the **permanent** betterment of his fellows will naturally have to consider what is the best method of carrying his policy through. There are three levels at which he might work. The first and weakest is by direct conscious political action; his policy is likely to die with him and so to be ineffective. The second is by the creation of a creed, since this has the prospect of lasting for quite a number of generations, so that there is some prospect of really changing the world a little with it. The third would be by directly changing man's nature, working through the laws of biological heredity, and if this could be done for long enough it would be really effective. But even if we knew all about man's genes, which we certainly do not, a policy of this kind would be almost impossible to enforce even for a short time, and, since it would take many generations to carry it through, it would almost certainly be dropped long before any perceptive effects were achieved." [emphasis in original] - 114

The Structure and Function of Government

What will the future structure and function of government be during the next million years?

"If transportation is easy, world conquest will be easier both for military reasons and because **the more uniform culture should make the world government more acceptable.**" [emphasis mine] - 193

"Widespread wealth can never be common in an overcrowded world, and so in most countries of the future the government will inevitably be autocratic or oligarchic; some will give good government and some bad, and the goodness or badness will depend much more on the personal merits of the rulers than it does in a more democratic country." - 194

"Whatever forms the government may take, there can be little doubt that the world will spontaneously divide itself into what I shall call provinces, that is to say regions, though with no permanently fixed boundaries, which possess some homogeneity of climate, character and interests. I use the same word whether the different provinces are federated together, or whether they are what we should now call separate sovereign states. How large will these provinces tend to be? That will depend on the means of communication and transport, and so once again there arises the question of whether the fuel problem is solved wholly or partially or not at all. In the past the chief means of communication was the horse, and the countries of Europe are still mostly of a size adopted to suit this almost extinct means of transport, though some of the more newly formed ones do show a trace of the influence of the railway. None of them are really of a size suited to the motor-car or the aeroplane, or to present power production, whether by coal or water-power, which cuts right across the national boundaries.

If the fuel problem is solved completely, so that mechanical power and transportation is available in the future to a greater extent even than at present, then the provinces will be large; for example, the whole of Europe may well be one, and the whole of North America another...

Consider next what are likely to be usual relations between the provinces. It is too much to expect that there can ever be a permanent world government benevolently treating all of them on a perfect equality; such an institution could only work during the rare occasions of a world-wide golden age. **To think of it as possible at other times is a misunderstanding of the function of government in any practical sense of the term. If the only things that a government was required to do were what everybody, or nearly everybody, wanted, there would be no need for the government to exist at all, because the things would be done anyhow;** this would be the impracticable ideal of the anarchist. **But if there are to be starving margins of population in most parts of the world, mere benevolence cannot suffice.** There would inevitably be ill feeling and jealousy between the provinces, with each believing that it was not getting its fair share of the good things, and in fact, it would be like the state of affairs with which we are all too familiar. **If then there is ever to be a world government, it will have to function as government do now, in the sense that it will have to coerce a minority - and indeed it may often be a majority - into doing things they do not want to do."** [emphasis mine]
- 191

Civilization and a Universal Culture of Science

"Civilization might, loosely speaking, be counted as a sort of domestication, in that it imposes on man conditions not at all typical of wild life." - 115

"Civilization has taught man how to live in dense crowds, and by that very fact those crowds are likely ultimately to constitute a majority of the world's population. Already there are many who prefer this crowded life, but there are others who do not, and these will gradually be eliminated. Life in the crowded conditions of cities has many unattractive features, but in the long run these may be overcome, **not so much by**

altering them, but simply by changing the human race into liking them." [emphasis mine] - 99

"To conclude, I have cited the past history of China as furnishing the type of an enduring civilization. It seems to provide a model to which the future history of the world may be expected broadly to conform. The scale will of course be altogether vaster, and the variety of happenings cannot by any means be foreseen, but I believe that the underlying ground theme can be foreseen and that in a general way it will be rather like the history of the Chinese Empire. The regions of the world most of the time will be competing against one another. Occasionally - more rarely, than has been the case in China - they will be united by some strong arm into an uneasy world-government, which will endure for a period until it falls by the inevitable decay that finally destroys all dynasties. There will be periods when some of the provinces relapse into barbarism, but all the time civilization will survive in some of them. **It will survive because it will be based on a single universal culture, derived from the understanding of science; for it is only through this understanding that the multitudes can continue to live.** On this basic culture there will be overlaid other cultures, often possessing a greater emotional appeal, which will vary according to climate and race from one province to another. Most of the time and over most of the earth there will be severe pressure from excess populations, and there will be periodic famines. There will be a consequent callousness about the value of the individual's life, and often there will be cruelty to a degree of which we do not willingly think. **This however is only one side of the history. On the other side there will be vast stores of learning, far beyond anything we can now imagine, and the intellectual stature of man will rise to ever higher levels.** And sometimes new discoveries will for a time relieve the human race from its fears, and there will be golden ages, when man may for a time be free to create wonderful flowerings in science, philosophy and the arts." [emphasis mine] - 203

Globalization Leads to Slavery

"As to the less successful members, the standard of living of any community living on its real earnings, as the communities of the future will have to do, is inevitably lower than that of one rapidly spending the savings of hundreds of millions of years as we are doing now. There will also be the frequent threat of starvation, which will operate against the least efficient members of every community with special force, so that it may be expected that the conditions of their work will be much more severe than at present. **Even now we see that a low standard of living in one country has the advantage in competing against a high standard in another.** If there is work to be done, and, of two men of equal quality, one is willing to do it for less pay than the other, in the long run it will be he who gets the work to do. Those who find the bad conditions supportable will be willing to work harder and for less reward; in a broad sense of the term they are more efficient than the others, because they get more done for less pay. There are of course many exceptions, for real skill will get its reward, but in the long run it is inevitable that the lower types of labour will have an exceedingly precarious life. One of the triumphs of our own golden age has been that slavery has been abolished over a great part of the earth. It is difficult to see how this condition can be maintained in the hard world of the

future with its starving margins, and it is too be feared that all too often a fraction of humanity will have to live in a state which, whatever it may be called, will be indistinguishable from slavery." [emphasis mine] - 189

Computers To Predict the Near Future

"I am imagining that some new discovery should make the process far more precise for short-term planning. This might come about, for example, through the use of new high-speed counting machines, which in a short space of time might explore the consequences of alternative policies with a completeness that is far beyond anything that the human mind can aspire to achieve directly." - 55

A program currently underway at the Pentagon called the Sentient World Simulation attempts to do just that. From [an article](#) by Mark Baard:

"U.S defense, intel and homeland security officials are constructing a parallel world, on a computer, which the agencies will use to test propaganda messages and military strategies."

"Called the Sentient World Simulation, the program uses AI routines based upon the psychological theories of Marty Seligman, among others. (Seligman introduced the theory of "learned helplessness" in the 1960s, after shocking beagles until they cowered, urinating, on the bottom of their cages.)"

"Yank a country's water supply. Stage a military coup. SWS will tell you what happens next."

"The sim will feature an AR avatar for each person in the real world, based upon data collected about us from government records and the internet."

Conclusion

The [next part](#) in this series will examine C. G. Darwin's views on the possibility of domesticating the whole of mankind. [Part 3](#) will look into the importance of creeds on the future history of mankind. The [second last part](#) in this series will examine C. G. Darwin's emphasis on the desirability of eugenics and ways of perpetuating "superior" genes in future generations. [Finally](#), I will examine the difficulties in controlling the size of the world population as described in *The Next Million Years*.

[1] Quotes from Charles Galton Darwin, *The Next Million Years* (1952).

Note: I first heard about this book from talks given by Alan Watt at [Cutting Through The Matrix.com](#), an individual well worth looking into.

Can Mankind be Domesticated?

The Next Million Years Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

March 10, 2008

"The only imaginable way of overcoming these [sic] difficulties would be to set up a class of consultants who would prescribe what marriages were eugenically admissible and how large the consequent families should be. But this does not solve the difficulty; it only pushes it back a stage, for it leaves unanswered the question who are to be the consultants, and what principles are to guide them in settling the values of the different qualities of mankind. It comes back to just the difficulty I described in my fable, that a tame animal must have a master, and that **therefore though it might conceivably be possible to tame the majority of mankind, this could only be done by leaving untamed a minority of the population. Moreover, this minority would have to be the group possessing the most superior qualities of all.**" [emphasis mine] - Charles Galton Darwin, 1952 (p123)



Is it possible to domesticate humanity as a whole? Would we need a wild master race to watch over us? Charles Galton Darwin in his 1952 book *The Next Million Years* [1] attempts to answer these questions.

In this book C. G. Darwin (1887-1962) attempts to give a general outline of the "future history" of mankind. He was an English physicist and grandson of Charles Darwin of evolutionary fame. Despite being concerned about the over-population of the world he had four sons and one daughter with his wife Katharine Pember. The hypocrisy of this may seem odd, but the concern about over-population only refers to inferior breeds of humans and not superior breeds like himself and his lineage. C.G. Darwin was a long time member and eventual president of the Eugenic Society (1953-59) which represented the belief system held among many of the political, scientific and aristocratic elites of his day and the present.

The [first part](#) in this series examined a variety of issues that C. G. Darwin envisions for the next million years of the future history of humanity including: the altering of human nature, the structure of government and the effects of globalization and computers.

Can Mankind be Domesticated?

From *The Next Million Years*:

"Civilization might, loosely speaking, be counted as a sort of domestication, in that it imposes on man conditions not at all typical of wild life. It might then at least be argued that it is a false analogy to compare man to a wild animal, but that he should rather be compared to one which has been domesticated. I shall maintain that this analogy would be false, and that man is and will always continue to be essentially a wild and not a tame animal.

Before coming to this main theme it is important to notice that, if it were admissible to regard man as a domesticated animal, the whole time-scale of history would have to be radically altered. Thus though the geological evidence shows that it takes a million years to make a new wild species, we know that the various domesticated animals have been created in a very much shorter time. For example, the ancestors of the greyhound and the bulldog of ten thousand years ago would probably have been quite indistinguishable. If then man's characteristics could be similarly remoulded in so short a time, the whole future of history might be radically different. It would become impossible to forecast man's future after as short a period as ten thousand years, hardly longer than the span of known past history, instead of the million years which holds if he is a wild animal.

In the first place, it is necessary to be clear as to what is meant by a wild or a tame animal. We are apt sometimes to call an animal wild because it is dangerous to man, and to call it tame because it is harmless, but this is a slovenly way of speaking, and here I shall use the word "tame" simply as a synonym for "domesticated" which I think is its true meaning. **A tame animal then is one that does the will of a master**, and the savage

watch-dog, trained to bite all intruders, is tamer than the friendly terrier which sometimes slips away to do its own private hunting. All tame animals owe their qualities to centuries of selective breeding, and it must always be remembered that the changes made in them owe nothing to the inheritance of acquired characters, but are due to the selection for breeding of those individual animals which show to the highest degree natural characteristics useful to their masters.

A chief feature in domesticated animals has been the creation of a great variety of breeds, each specialized for some particular purpose, either practical or aesthetic. Each breed far excels its wild ancestry in the quality for which it has been bred, so that race-horses run faster than wild horses, dairy cows give much more milk than and wild cattle, and **the sheep-dog has even been bred to do skilfully the exact opposite of what the ancestral wolf would have done**. Now human families often show special qualities in which they excel their fellows, and in some cases these qualities seem to be hereditary - witness the musicians of the Bach family. If man is really a tame animal, there is no reason why breeds of man should not be created, say breeds of mathematicians or of professional runners, who should possess gifts far beyond anything we now know, and far beyond anything that their fellows could compete against. Certainly at the present time mankind is very far from this, but that would not exclude the possibility in the not so very distant future, if man really were a tame animal. I shall consider this question of special breeds later in the chapter in more detail; all the evidence seems to show that they will not arise, but to see this clearly, it is best to return to the prime feature of tameness, obedience to a master.

It is obvious that we in this country, with our passion for freedom, value wildness very highly, whereas in some lands, where the population are content to live under a much more strictly controlled rule of discipline, tameness may be more nearly acceptable. This question of taste is irrelevant however, for it might be that a tame race could achieve so much higher a degree of efficiency that it could master the wild ones, and so reduce them also to a state of tameness. I am going to maintain that this cannot happen, in that man is untameable. The reason involves a feature not often present in scientific arguments, and I will venture to introduce it by means of a fable." [emphasis mine] - 115

C.G Darwin's fable revolves around a highly intelligent, long living (ten-thousand years) "director" who breeds people for specialized tasks.

"Though this has only been presented as a fable, the experience with domesticated animals does show that the most astonishing improvements could be made in the various human faculties, if a similar course of continuous selection could be applied to man over as long a period of time. **The trouble is that for man this is not possible, because he has got to apply the selection to himself**, and that means that it is not merely a different problem, but a wholly different kind of problem. There is a fundamental difference between the subjective and the objective. Scientific progress has always succeeded only by regarding its themes of study objectively; even in the field of psychology progress has mainly come by the study of the minds of others, that is to say objectively, instead of by following the old barren course of introspection. The most severe critic of his own

conduct can never judge his actions as if they were someone else's, and the selective breeding of other types of people would be no guide at all in the breeding of his own kind.

If the director had foreseen his death, he would have tried to produce a successor to himself. Since his profound belief in heredity had been so fully confirmed by the remarkable changes he had made in his subjects, he would naturally expect that it would be one of his own sons that would be best fitted to succeed him, but his difficulty would be just the same if he were trying to find a successor elsewhere. The matter is on quite a different footing from all his other decisions. For the others he could say: "I have improved all our breeds, by seeing which son improved on the qualities of his father. That is why I select you." For his own successor the utmost he could say would be "I am selecting you in the hope that you may be a better director than I have been. But I have no idea how you will set about it, since, if I had known what I was failing in, I should have set it right myself." The targets in the two statements are quite different, for in one he knows what he is aiming at, in the other he does not. In one case the target is to make the man better, in the other to hope to make him as good. **One is the systematic breeding of tame animals, the other the unsystematic method of nature in the breeding of wild animals.**

This point is so important that before following it to its conclusion I will give another example, which has the advantage of not being fabulous. In their studies of how to improve the human race the eugenists have very naturally considered both ends of their problem, the increase in the good qualities of humanity and the elimination of the bad qualities. Their chief effort has gone, quite rightly at first, into the easy part of the problem, and they have spent most of their energy in pointing out the disastrous tendencies of the present policy of directly encouraging the breeding of the feeble-minded. This is undoubtedly useful work, but it is comparatively easy, since these feeble-minded can be regarded objectively by their superiors, and so might become amenable to the same sort of control as is applicable to domestic animals. This restraint of the breeding of the feeble-minded is important, and it must never be neglected, but it cannot be regarded as a really effective way of improving the human race. If by analogy one wished to improve the breed of racehorses, one might accomplish a little by always slaughtering the horse that finished last in every race, but it would be a much slower process than the actual one of sending the winner to the stud farm.

Conscious of this criticism, eugenists have often attempted to define what are the good characteristics which should be positively encouraged, instead of only the negative ones that must be discouraged, but the results are disappointing. Lists of meritorious qualities such as good health, good physique, high intelligence, good family history, are compiled, and those possessing them are told that they should breed, but the statements lead nowhere in practice, for no one can be expected to assess his own merits and demerits in a balance way. How, for example, is a man to weigh his own good health or good ability against a heredity made dubious, say, by an uncle who was insane, or again how is he to strike a balance between considerable artistic gifts - as he thinks - together with a good family record, but quite bad health. **It is clearly beyond anyone to decide these things**

for himself, and even then the matter is only half settled, since similar judgments are needed for both partners to the marriage. However helpful the literature may be which can be consulted, it is evident that subjective judgments on such matters are too difficult; with the best will in the world they would very often be made wrongly, because, however sincerely he tries, no man can be a good judge in his own case." [emphasis mine] - 120

Could Man be Turned Into an Ant?

"These examples suggest the impossibility of taming mankind as a whole, but before accepting the principle fully, it is proper to examine a case where the exact contrary has happened; this is in the insect civilization of the ants or termites. In applying the same term, civilization, to both ants and men, it is hardly necessary to say that I am drawing an analogy between things which are really of a very different quality. All species of ants live in cities, and some species have developed agriculture, others animal husbandry; but all these practices are purely instinctive and individual to each species. **On the other hand human civilization is an acquired character, based on education**, and so is not inherent in man's nature. Nevertheless it may be worth while to follow out the analogy a little further. Admitting the different sense of the words, it may be said that all species of ants have made the third revolution, the invention of cities, that some have made the second, agriculture, none the first or fourth, fire and science; but they have all added another revolution of their own, the complete control of the problem of sex. The ants' nest has no rulers at all, for the queen is hardly more than an egg-laying mechanism, and they seem to get on perfectly well without civil servants or lawyers or captains of industry.

Why cannot man set up a community like an ants' nest? This would be the ideal of the anarchist, and hitherto it has held no promise at all of success, **but with the help of recent and probable future biological discoveries, some sort of imitation by man of the ants' nest cannot be quite excluded from consideration**. Thus the control of the numbers of the two sexes may become possible, and with the knowledge of the curious sexual hormones **it might also become possible to free the majority of mankind from the urgency of sexual impulse**, so that they could live contented celibate lives, instead of the unsatisfied celibate lives that are the compulsory lot of such a large fraction of the present population of the world. If these discoveries should be made - and this is really by no means impossible - man would be able to carry out the sex revolution which is the typical characteristic of the insect civilizations. The detail would of course have to be quite different, for instead of one queen there would have to be large numbers of fertile women to renew the population, whereas there might be one king, literally the father of his country. Also it is probable that on account of their greater physical strength, it would be the men who would be the workers." - [emphasis mine] 125

What About a Master Breed?

"In order to create such specialist breeds there would have to be a master breed at the summit, and this would be a totally different kind of thing from all the other breeds, because it would have to create itself." - 130

"At every turn the argument leads back to this question of the master breed. Nothing can be done in the way of changing man from a wild into a tame animal without first creating such a breed, but most people are entirely inconsistent in their ideas of what they want created. On the one hand they feel that all the world's problems would be solved if only there were a wise and good man who would tell everybody what to do, but on the other hand they bitterly resent being themselves told what to do. As to which of these motives would prevail, it seems at least probable that it would be the resentment, so that if the breed should arise in any manner, it would be extirpated before it could ever become well established. It is, however, imaginable, that there might be a part of the world in which the breed was accepted, and that this part should gain a superiority over the rest of the world, because it could develop various suitable breeds of specialists under the control and direction of the master breed, and by the exercise of the skills of these specialists it might overcome the other nations. So it is appropriate to look a little further into the matter.

Imagine that through new discoveries in biology, say by suitably controlled doses of X-rays, it becomes possible to modify the genes in any desired direction, so that heritable changes can be produced in the qualities of some members of the human race. I may say I do not believe this is ever likely to be practicable, but that does not matter as far as concerns the present argument. The first success might be in some physical attribute, for example, by making a breed with longer and stronger legs so that it could jump a good deal higher than anyone can at present. But passing to more important matters, there might be created a breed which could think more abstractly, say a breed of mathematicians, or one that could think more judiciously, say a breed of higher civil servants. These would be of great value, but they would not be the master breed, and the question arises of a more precise prescription for what the qualities of the master breed are to be.

It is usually best to build on what one already has, rather than to start from nothing. So the natural procedure would be to begin with existing rulers, since these have already established themselves as acceptable to at least a good many of their fellow creatures. One would collect together, say, a hundred of the most important present rulers - among them of course should be included a good many who exert secret influence without holding any overt office - and tell them to get on with the business of settling what the master breed should be. It is impossible to believe that any such body of men would ever reach agreement on any subject whatever; so this plan fails.

In the search for the qualities of the master breed the next idea might be to appeal to the wisdom of our forefathers. Plato in his **Republic** [emphasis in original] devotes much attention to this very subject. Why not then find a Plato, give him his group of recruits, and let him educate them for thirty years according to his prescription - though perhaps fortifying it by the findings of modern educational theory; the result should be the master breed. But this will not do either, for Plato was not educating the master breed, he was educating the civil servant breed. It is not about these that there is any difficulty; it is the finding of someone to fill the role of Plato himself. It all comes back to the point that we do not know in the remotest degree what we want; for I do not count as an answer the one

that would usually be proposed, which would be that the type required should be good and wise, while at the same time showing a special favour for the particular enthusiasms of the proposer. The reason for the impossibility of making a prescription for the master breed is that it is not a breed at all; to call it so is to change the sense of the word. Breeds are specialized for particular purposes, **but the essence of masters is that they must not be specialized. They have to be able to deal with totally unforeseen conditions, and this is a quality of wild, not of tame, life. No prescription for the master breed is possible.**

In these considerations I have been assuming the licence of supposing that we might be able really to change human nature in a heritable manner, and this is far beyond all probability. Returning now to more practical considerations, there seems no likelihood whatever of a master breed arising. All through history the most formidable difficulty of every ruler has been the selection of his successor, and the best intentions have been nearly always disappointed. Indeed it is notably surprising how very seldom the choice has been well made. The immediate cause of these failures, has been the difficulty of the subjective judgments on the basis of which the choice must be made, but fundamentally they have arisen from a cause in the deep nature of mankind. Of all animals man is the most ready to try experiments and there are always candidates - far too many candidates - who regard themselves as fit members for the master breed. This quality is a characteristic of a wild animal, and it will always prevent man from domesticating himself. He will always prevent the creation of the master breed, through which alone the rest of man could be domesticated. The evolution of the human race will not be accomplished in the ten thousand years of tame animals, but in the million years of wild animals, because man is and will always continue to be a wild animal." [emphasis mine] - 130

"It always comes back to the same point, that to carry out any policy systematically in such a way as permanently to influence the human race, there would have to be a master breed of humanity, not itself exposed to the conditions it is inducing in the rest. The master breed, being wild animals, would be subject to all the fashions, tastes and passions of humanity as we know it, and so would never have the constancy to establish for generation after generation a consistent policy which could materially alter the nature of mankind." - 184

Conclusion

The [next part](#) in this series will look into the importance of creeds on the future history of mankind. The [second last part](#) in this series will examine C. G. Darwin's emphasis on the desirability of eugenics and ways of perpetuating "superior" genes in future generations. [Finally, I will examine](#) the difficulties in controlling the size of the world population as described in *The Next Million Years*.

[1] Quotes from Charles Galton Darwin, *The Next Million Years* (1952).

The Importance of Creeds in Shaping the Future

The Next Million Years Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

March 17, 2008



"In part the result arises from two very general characteristics of mankind, the tendency of the child to imitate what it sees going on round it, and the tendency of parents to want to teach their children." - Charles Galton Darwin, 1952 (p102)

The way we interpret the world, our creed, is partly derived from our personal experiences but is usually dominated by the creed of our parents and the impact of education. Popular creeds have been a major driving force for the entire history of the world. Naturally then, if creeds could be developed or manipulated the future course of history would also be altered.

Charles Galton Darwin's 1952 book *The Next Million Years* [1] attempts to give a general outline of the "future history" of mankind by using the "law of human nature". C.G. Darwin (1887-1962) was an English physicist and grandson of Charles Darwin of evolutionary fame. Despite being concerned about the over-population of the world he had four sons and one daughter with his wife Katharine Pember. The hypocrisy of this may seem odd, but the concern about over-population only refers to inferior breeds of humans and not superior breeds like himself and his lineage. C.G. Darwin was a long time member and eventual president of the Eugenic Society (1953-59) which represented the belief system held among many of the political, scientific and aristocratic elites of his day and the present.

What is a Creed?

From *The Next Million Years*:

"Turning now away from these narrower questions of biological heredity, consider the larger question of how education, in the widest sense, has affected and will affect history. Every man builds up a world of thought, directing his conduct, **which is partly formed from his own experience, but even more of it is acquired from his teachers, and in later life from friends and acquaintances, or from books.** I shall use the word **creed** [emphasis in original] to denote a set of tenets acquired in this general manner. I mean the word in an entirely colourless sense, with no question arising of whether the creed is true or untrue, moral or immoral. It is merely a body of philosophical thought - whether it is reasonable or unreasonable philosophy - which is strongly held and used as a main guide to conduct." [emphasis mine] - 104

"Those [creeds] we hold firmly appear to us to have the inevitability of the propositions of formal logic. **Anyone who does not happen to share our creeds is at the least regarded as an illogical fool, but more frequently as a perversely wicked person.** It is this that has led to most of the terrible series of persecutions that have blackened the records of history.

Creeds often arouse the most fanatical devotion. It is enthusiasm for his creed that has created the martyr, and, if we happen to share his creed, the martyr is regarded as one of the noblest of humanity. But the matter is not as simple as that, for this judgment has usually been prejudiced by the fact that we do sympathize with the martyr's creed, and it is necessary to look at the subject without this prejudice. The martyr is driven to make the ultimate sacrifice by his enthusiasm for his creed, but this enthusiasm has usually been evoked by the counter-enthusiasm of his persecutors, the majority in power, who hold an opposite creed with equal fervour. **For every man who is willing to die for his faith there will be ten men who are willing to kill for their faith.** The ten feel that they are actuated by the same motive, the pure hatred of evil, as that of the martyr, and the main difference is only that for weak human nature the role of the persecutor is easier than the role of the persecuted. **But that there is no very great difference between the two is shown by many examples in history, for when the persecuted party has gained the upper hand, it has usually indulged in counter-persecution on a scale equal to that which it had itself suffered.**" [emphasis mine] - 107

"Another feature of creeds seems to be rather general. **Though the majority of a population, say something like nine-tenths, accept their creed implicitly and regard it as part of the law of nature, there is always a small minority who do not.** Most people - call them the sheep - follow the ideas of their leaders unquestioningly, but this minority - the goats - **goes by contraries, and disbelieves anything just because those around them believe it.** The goats are often not very pleasant people, but they are usually above the average of intelligence. **It is probably the corroding influence of the goats that gradually saps the vitality of a creed by its cumulative infection, and**

indeed there may well be a proportionality between the number of goats in a community and the life span of the creed of the sheep in that community." [emphasis mine] - 112

The above paragraph highlights perfectly why the dialectic technique works so well in society. The bulk of the population, C. G. Darwin's sheep, blindly follow without questioning anything. The bulk of the remainder, C. G. Darwin's goats, just as blindly follow anything that is contrary to the sheep. Neither group examines or attempts to understand any situation and both are equally apart of the problem. Sheep and goats alike have to learn to lead themselves and not blindly follow before any positive changes will occur.

Continuing from the quote above:

"In future history the constancy of human nature makes it certain that man will continue to be dominated by enthusiasm for creeds of one kind or another; **he will persecute and be persecuted again and again for the sake of ideas**, some of which to later ages will seem of no importance, and even unintelligible. **But there is one much more valuable aspect of creeds that must be noticed. They serve to give a continuity to policy far greater than can usually be attained by intellectual conviction.** There are many cases in history of enlightened statesmen who have devoted their lives to carrying through some measure for the general good. They may have succeeded, only to find that the next generation neglects all they have done, so that it becomes undone again in favour of some other quite different way of benefiting humanity. The intellectual adoption of a policy thus often hardly survives for more than a single generation, and this is too short a period for such a policy to overcome the tremendous effects of pure chance. **But if the policy can arouse enough enthusiasm to be incorporated in a creed, then there is at least a prospect that it will continue for something like ten generations**, and that is long enough to give a fair probability that it will prevail over the operations of pure chance. **Thus a creed may have the rudiment of the quality, possessed by the genes of mankind, of being able to produce a permanent effect on humanity.**

If the history of the future is not regarded as the automatic unfolding of a sequence of uncontrollable events - and few, of us would accept this inevitability - then anyone who has decided what measures are desirable for the **permanent** [emphasis in original] betterment of his fellows will naturally have to consider what is the best method of carrying his policy through. There are three levels at which he might work. The first and weakest is by direct conscious political action; his policy is likely to die with him and so to be ineffective. The second is by the creation of a creed, since this has the prospect of lasting for quite a number of generations, so that there is some prospect of really changing the world a little with it. The third would be by directly changing man's nature, working through the laws of biological heredity, and if this could be done for long enough it would be really effective. But even if we knew all about man's genes, which we certainly do not, a policy of this kind would be almost impossible to enforce even for a short time, and, since it would take many generations to carry it through, it would almost certainly be dropped long before any perceptive effects were achieved. **That is why creeds are so tremendously important for the future; a creed gives the best practical**

hope that a policy will endure well beyond the life of its author, and so it gives the best practical hope that man can have for really controlling his future fate."

[emphasis mine] - 113

The Truth of a Creed

"It will be noticed that I have not said anything at all about what is the fundamental question in regard to any creed, and that is whether it is true or false. **For one who wants to believe in a creed its truth is all that matters...**" [emphasis mine] - 108

"In the past there have been creeds, such, for example, as the belief in magic or divination, which have been very widely accepted, but we now know them to have been quite absurdly false. Yet they have exerted the very greatest influence on human history. **The species homo has not changed, and there are still very many who are only too eager to believe in such things - not by any means all of them confined to the less advanced civilizations - and it must be expected that this tendency will continue to recur again and again.**" [emphasis mine] - 108

The degree that any creeds, regardless of its absurdity, can be developed using modern forms of education was elaborated on by Bertrand Russell. Among other things, Russell operated an [experimental school in the late 1920's](#) with his second wife Dora Black.

From Bertrand Russell's 1952 book *The Impact of Science on Society* [2] :

This subject [mass psychology/education] will make great strides when it is taken up by scientists under a scientific dictatorship. Anaxagoras maintained that snow is black, but no one believed him. The social psychologists of the future will have a number of classes of school children on whom they will try different methods of producing an unshakeable conviction that snow is black. Various results will soon be arrived at. First, that the influence of home is obstructive. Second, that not much can be done unless indoctrination begins before the age of ten. Third, that verses set to music and repeatedly intoned are very effective. Fourth, that the opinion that snow is white must be held to show a morbid taste for eccentricity. But I anticipate. It is for future scientists to make these maxims precise and discover exactly how much it costs per head to make children believe that snow is black, and how much less it would cost to make them believe it is dark grey." - 40

For more about Bertrand Russell's view on Mass Psychology and Education please read [this article](#).

Eugenics Creed

It should come as little surprise that C. G. Darwin, president of the Eugenics Society, would see the superiority of a creed for intelligent people based on the premise of eugenics. Which of course, is his creed.

"The detailed march of history will depend a great deal on the creeds held by the various branches of the human race. It cannot be presumed with any confidence that purely superstitious creeds will always be rejected by civilized communities, in view of the extraordinary credulity shown even now by many reputedly educated people. It is true that there may not be many at the present time, whose actions are guided by an inspection of the entrails of a sacrificial bull, but the progress has not been very great, for there are still many believers in palmistry and astrology. **It is to be expected then that in the future, as in the past, there will be superstitions which will notably affect the course of history**, and some of them, such as ancestor-worship, will have direct effects on the development of the human species. **But superstitious creeds will hardly be held by the highly intelligent, and it is precisely the creed of these that matters. Is it possible that there should arise a eugenic creed, which - perhaps working through what I have called the method of unconscious selection - should concern itself with the improvement of the inherent nature of man, instead of resting content with merely giving him good but impermanent acquired characters?** Without such a creed man's nature will only be changed through the blind operation of natural selection; with it he might aspire to do something towards really changing his destiny." [emphasis mine] - 202

Conclusion

The [next part](#) in this series will examine C. G. Darwin's emphasis on the desirability of eugenics and ways of perpetuating "superior" genes in future generations. Finally, I will examine the difficulties in [controlling the size of the world population](#) as described in *The Next Million Years*.

[1] Quotes from Charles Galton Darwin, *The Next Million Years* (1952).

[2] Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN 0-415-10906-X

Eugenics and the Survival of Mankind

The Next Million Years Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

March 24, 2008

"When homo sapiens is changing, it will not be by the whole race gaining simultaneously whatever qualities better fit it for survival, but rather by certain types of mankind proving superior to the rest in survival value, so that they contribute a larger proportion to the later generations, and in so doing drag the average qualities of humanity in the same direction." - Charles Galton Darwin, 1952 (p96)

Charles Galton Darwin's 1952 book *The Next Million Years* [1] attempts to give a general outline of the "future history" of mankind by using the "law of human nature". C.G. Darwin (1887-1962) was an English physicist and grandson of Charles Darwin of evolutionary fame. Despite being concerned about the over-population of the world he had four sons and one daughter with his wife Katharine Pember. The hypocrisy of this may seem odd, but the concern about over-population only refers to inferior breeds of humans and not superior breeds like himself and his lineage. C.G. Darwin was a long time member and eventual president of the Eugenic Society (1953-59) which represented the belief system held among many of the political, scientific and aristocratic elites of his day and the present.



Some Eugenic Basics

From *The Next Million Years*.

"Therefore in so far as it is possible to look beyond the brute question of survival and to make subjective estimates of value about the future human race, I shall rate as admirable any improvement that in the course of the ages should develop in the intellect of mankind, and any improvement in his sense of devotion to his fellow man. A combination of the two qualities is best of all, but if it is necessary to select between them, I should assign first place to intelligence." - 44

"General intelligence should always be of value, particularly the unspecialized intelligence that is adaptable to many varieties of purpose; so with some confidence it may be expected that man will become cleverer than he is now. It is by no means so clear that he will become morally better as well, since in a highly competitive world, the sinner has many advantages over the saint. That is disappointing, but it must be remembered that moral codes have differed a good deal at different periods in history..." - 98

A Darwin on Social Darwinism

Social Darwinism - made famous by the Nazi eugenics programs - is promoted in *The Next Million Years*.

"There are many other qualities, which help survival - and I shall be content to mention only a few of them, some estimable and some the reverse. We value intelligence, honest, capacity for leadership, and other similar qualities, and we mark our approval by selecting their possessors for promotion. A man is promoted on account of his individual merits, without any thought about the consequences for the distant future. In a less abnormal world than the present, his increased prosperity should lead to the man's having a larger family than those of the less prosperous, so that the good qualities inherited from him should gradually become diffused throughout the population in later generations. At the present time the exact opposite happens all too often, in that he is likely to have a smaller family than the average; in fact success in life is at present antagonistic to success in survival." 93

"...but still it is interesting to see how it [selective breeding] would apply to humanity, when considerations induced from ethics are for the moment forgotten. A philanthropic dictator wants to perfect the innate moral qualities of the human race; how should he go about it? Following the example of the dog trainer, he will devote all his attention to the good children, and he will neglect the worse ones, doing all he can to see that they do not succeed in life, and above all that they are not permitted to hand on their inferior qualities to later generations. Actually all too often philanthropic effort goes in exactly the opposite direction, into curing the faults of the worst, without recognizing that the acquired characters so induced are quite impermanent. In saying this I am thinking of the long-range policy, and I do not in the least want to belittle the self-sacrificing work that is done by so many noble workers in improving the conduct of the worse elements of the population. It may be justified as being a good in itself, and moreover the existence of criminals perturbs very seriously the life of the rest of the community, so that everyone benefits if this nuisance is removed. **Still it is proper to note, that the policy of paying most attention to the inferior types is the most inefficient way possible of achieving the perfectibility of the human race.**" [emphasis mine] - 103

"So it is surely a justifiable claim that those selected for promotion are rather more likely to have superior qualities than those who were not so selected. Now man, like every other animal, does tend to pass on his natural qualities to his offspring; there is no certainty about it, but there is a somewhat better chance that the sons of the promoted candidate

will be abler than those of his unsuccessful rivals. Since there will always be need for as many able people as possible, the encouragement of the promoted man to have children increases the chance that we shall find them in the next generation. The argument may be pushed further still. **There is a good deal of evidence that some men's ability is more intimately incorporated in their heredity than it is for others. Thus there have been men of pre-eminent ability, risen from the ranks, whose descendants have sunk back in a generation or two, whereas there are families where generation after generation goes on producing men of very good ability. Clearly the probability of producing able men is rather greater in a family that has shown that it can do so over several generations.**" [emphasis mine] - 137

"...it is indisputable that the more prosperous members of the community are not producing their share of the next generation, so that selection is now operating against the prosperous. As an example, if the list of candidates is examined, who are applying for any office of high or even mediocre importance, it will be found that something like nine-tenths of them have either no children, or one, or two. Of course, if everyone had exactly two children, and both these children married and had exactly two more, the population would be exactly steady, but as things are, it is a fair guess that, in each thirty years of a generation, this part of our population is reducing itself to something between a half and two-thirds. This signifies that within a century, there will at most be quarter as many people of this type as there are now. There will of course be some compensation by the rise from other levels, but, as I have pointed out, to found our hopes on them is to take a worse instead of a better chance. The whole thing is a catastrophe which it is now almost too late to prevent." - 140

Aiding the Process: Unconscious Selection

"To conclude the chapter I return to the narrower question of the tendency of civilization to eliminate its ablest people. This has happened in the past, and is certainly happening now, and if it is always to happen, it signifies a recurrent degeneration of all civilizations, only to be renewed by the incursion of barbarians who have not suffered similarly. If any civilized country could overcome this effect, so that it alone retained both its ability and its civilization, it would certainly become the leading nation of the world. Man is a wild animal, and cannot accomplish this by using the methods of the animal breeder, but may he not be able to devise something that would go beyond the long-drawn-out automatic processes of Natural Selection? I think he can. A cruder and simpler method must be used than the animal breeder's. Something might be accomplished on the line of what is called "Unconscious Selection" in the **Origin of Species** [emphasis in original].

Unconscious Selection signifies that the farmer, who has no intention whatever of improving his herd, will naturally select his best and not his worst animals to breed from, and in consequence he will find that in fact he does improve the herd. As I have pointed out, we are all the time assessing the rival merits of individuals for promotion; they are each chosen for some special purpose, but like the unconscious selection of the farmer, the choice does mark the promoted person as being superior to the average. **Any country that could devise a method whereby the promoted were strongly encouraged to have**

more children than the rest, would find itself soon excelling in the world. It would only be a rough and ready method, with many defects; for example, from the point of view of heredity women are as important as men, but it would not so often be easy to take their qualities into account. Furthermore the method would be extremely subject to fashions - in which it would resemble the animal breeder's method - for at one time greatest value would be given to the arts, at another to military skill, and at another to administrative ability and so on. However, ability is not usually a very specialized quality, and the effect would be to preserve high ability in general, and thereby to increase it, since the abler people would be contributing more, instead of less, than their share to the next generation.

A nation might consciously adopt such a policy, or it might be that an economic policy adopted for quite other reasons should have this unintended result. Whatever way it came about, if it could last for even a few generations, the effect would begin to show. But humanity is capricious [sic] and subject to the passions of the immediate present, and it is hardly likely that any country, whether democracy or autocracy, would follow such a policy long enough for it to really tell. The best hope for it to endure would be that it should become attached to a creed, and it would not matter very much whether the creed was reasonable or unreasonable, provided that it produced the effect. Either ancestor-worship, or a belief in the sinfulness of birth-control, would at least place the promoted on an equality with the unpromoted, and with their superior ability this would give them the advantage. But since the matter concerns the more intelligent, a reasonable creed would have a better appeal than a mere superstition. Such a creed might be one which inculcated in those who were promoted the duty of having more children than their fellows, as an act benefiting the human race. The prospect of such a creed arising does not seem very hopeful, but if by its means any country can even partly solve the problem, it will lead the world, and it will be doing so through the method of "Unconscious Selection"." [emphasis mine] - 152

Aiding the Process: Altering Mankind

"...medical science might succeed in materially lengthening life without senility, though in a world of overcrowded population it is not very clear what would be gained. **Looking a little deeper there is the possibility of substantially altering the intellectual and moral natures of individuals by some sort of hormonal injections;** already great effects have been produced in animals. Finally, as the most curious speculation of all, it is not quite impossible that it may one day be feasible to select in advance the sex of each child that is to be born. Whether the decision is made by the parents, or by their rulers, this suggests that probability of a great unbalance in the populations of the world." [emphasis mine] - 76

The idea of using injection to alter mankind was also promoted by Bertrand Russell in his 1952 book *The Impact of Science on Society* [2] :

"Diet, injections, and injunctions will combine, from a very early age, to produce the sort of character and the sort of beliefs that the authorities consider desirable, and any serious

criticism of the powers that be will become psychologically impossible. Even if all are miserable, all will believe themselves happy, because the government will tell them that they are so." - 61

For more on Bertrand Russell's views on the scientific breeding of humans, please read [this previous article](#).

Returning to *The Next Million Years*:

"If a dictator should ever aspire to bring about some really permanent change in humanity, he could do it if, and only if, he knew how to alter some of the human genes, for only so could the changed quality become anchored as a fixed character of the race." - 82

C. G. Darwin goes on to state that he does not believe that the direct scientific manipulation of genes will ever be possible but recent advances in genetics has made this a very likely possibility.

Parasitic Elite

"It is always necessary to remember that nature itself is quite non-moral, and that there are many qualities which we by no means admire, which nevertheless are often regrettably effective in the struggle for life. All through the animal kingdom one of the most successful roles is that of the parasite, and there are states of human society where such a parasite as the professional beggar is as successful as anyone else. Something of the kind is unfortunately true in Britain just now. The people we are really encouraging are not those that we think we are for a great many of the people who get good promotion are contributing less than their share to the next generation. At present the most efficient way for a man to survive in Britain is to be almost half-witted, completely irresponsible and spending a lot of time in prison, where his health is far better looked after than outside; on coming out with restored health he is ready to beget many further children quite promiscuously, and these "problem children" are then beautifully cared for by the various charitable societies and agencies, until such time as they have grown old enough to carry on the good work for themselves. It is this parasitic type that is at present most favoured in our country; if nothing is done, a point will come where the parasite will kill its host by exhaustion and then of course itself perish miserably and contemptibly through having no one to support it. ..." - 93

Not surprisingly, C. G. Darwin never contemplated the parasitic attributes of him and his fellow elite.

Conclusion

The [final part](#) in this series will examine the difficulties in controlling the size of the world population as described in C. G. Darwin's *The Next Million Years*.

[1] Quotes from Charles Galton Darwin, *The Next Million Years* (1952).

[2] Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN 0-415-10906-X

Over-Population and the Sanctity of Life

The Next Million Years Part 5

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)
March 31, 2008



Can the size of the world population be properly managed by a powerful world government? Are we doomed to multiply until the Malthusian breaks are applied? Are we forever going to have a "starving margin" within our societies? These questions are answered by an elite.

Charles Galton Darwin's 1952 book *The Next Million Years* [1] attempts to give a general outline of the "future history" of mankind. C.G. Darwin (1887-1962) was an English physicist and grandson of Charles Darwin of evolutionary fame. Despite being concerned about the over-population of the world he had four sons and one daughter with his wife Katharine Pember. The hypocrisy of this may seem odd, but the concern about over-population only refers to inferior breeds of humans and not superior breeds like himself and his lineage. C.G. Darwin was a long time member and eventual president of the Eugenic Society (1953-59) which represented the belief system held among many of the political, scientific and aristocratic elites of his day and the present.

World Wide Limitation of Population Size

From *The Next Million Years*.

"I have already shown the short-term difficulties which seem to make it sure that no spontaneous process will avoid the menace of over-population. Is it possible that the statesmen of all countries, perceiving these dangers, should combine together to make and enforce a world-wide policy of limitation? It would have to be world-wide, because if any nation were recalcitrant, its population would increase relatively to the rest, so that sooner or later it would dominate the others. That the prospects of such a world-wide policy are not good is witnessed by the total failure hitherto achieved in the far easier problem of military disarmament. How would the nations settle the respective numbers admissible for their populations? The only principle that would have a chance of acceptance would be to **base the numbers on existing populations**, and then the question arises why one particular set of proportions between the various countries should be frozen constant for all time. Since the aim of the policy is to retain world-wide prosperity, **every single country would be faced with the problem of taking care of its own limitation**, and, as has been seen, this would not come about spontaneously. Even if a government could devise an effective method, it would be an odious task for the rulers to have to enforce it, and there can be no doubt they would often evade doing so. With the best of goodwill, it would be hard to enforce the limitation because of the gradualness of the increase, for the rulers could always excuse themselves by the argument that the slight illegal increase of this year was accidental and would next year be compensated by a corresponding decrease, so that action might be postponed, and sometimes it would be postponed too long.

It is clear from all this that the world policy would need to be supported by international sanctions, and the only ultimate sanction must be war. Present methods of warfare would not be nearly murderous enough to reduce populations seriously, and even so they would take a nearly equal toll of victims from the unoffending nations. So after the war the question would arise of how to reduce the excess population of the offending nation. It is not possible to be humane in this, but the most humane method would seem to be infanticide together with the sterilization of a fraction of the adult population. Such sterilization could now be done without the brutal methods practised in the past, but it would certainly be vehemently resisted." [emphasis mine] – 148

Bertrand Russell in his 1952 book *The Impact of Science of Society* [2] offers a very similar situation but proposed that this [international authority should have total control of the food supply](#).

From *The Impact of Science on Society*:

"To deal with this problem [increasing population and decreasing food supplies] it will be necessary to find ways of preventing an increase in world population. If this is to be done otherwise than by wars, pestilence, and famines, it will demand a powerful international authority. **This authority should deal out the world's food to the various nations in proportion to their population** at the time of the establishment of the authority. If any nation subsequently increased its population it **should not on that account receive any more food**. The motive for not increasing population would therefore be very compelling. What method of preventing an increase might be preferred should be left to each state to decide." [emphasis mine] - 124

Enforcement of Population Control and the Development of Creeds of Resistance

One of the problems anticipated by Charles Galton Darwin with the strict enforcement of population control is that of the development of an opposition creed.

"Even worse difficulties, however, would arise than those I have so far contemplated. I have been assuming that the policy of limitation was accepted by the majority on broad rational grounds, but it is quite certain that in a very short time it would encounter fanatical opposition. Even though the procreative instinct has not the violence of the sexual instinct, yet it is an emotion possessed by many people, and as such it will be particularly liable to get incorporated in creeds. There are already creeds that maintain the wrongfulness of birth-control, though there is at present no very strong emotion associated with them. **But if there were to be any enforcement of birth-control by authority, it is certain that many new creeds would spring up** which would regard the practice as sinful, and the tenet would be held with an enthusiasm not to be overcome by the efforts of rational persuasion. **There are many creeds, which we hold to be unwise, which we can admit and leave alone, because their effects are mainly to damage their believers. This could not be one of them, since the believers would automatically gain an undue share of the next generation.** Persecution would be the only recourse against such a creed, and the massacre of the innocents or the blood of the martyrs would water the seed of the faith. It is not of course true, as is sometimes maintained by religious devotees, that persecution always fails to extinguish a faith - for example the Arian heresy was much persecuted by the orthodox church, and there are no Arians now - but there is no doubt that persecution is a great encourager, and it is fairly sure that not all such creeds would be extinguished. Once again the effort to produce comfortable prosperity would call for a brutality that is just the kind of thing it is trying to avoid." [emphasis mine] - 150

More on the importance of creeds [here](#).

The Starving Margin and the Sanctity of Human Life

"The central feature of human history must always be the pressure of population. Man, the wild animal, will obey the law of life and will tend to multiply until he is limited by the means of subsistence. This is the normal condition of the world, and it carries the consequence that the final check on population is by starvation. There will be a fraction of humanity, a **starving margin**, who have got to die simply because not enough food can be grown to keep them alive. The death may be directly due to intermittent famines, or to diseases caused by malnutrition, or it may be due to warfare; for when a country is dying of starvation and sees, or thinks it sees, a neighbouring country with plenty to eat, it would be beyond most human nature to accept certain passive death instead of possible active death. The central question for humanity is the problem of the starving margin." [emphasis in original] - 170

"The social sense of any community, and its immediate practical interest, **will not tolerate living in contact with the sufferings of its own starving margin...**" [emphasis mine] - 173

"In connection with the recent wonderful advances in medical science, this is the place to mention a matter that will very soon indeed be of immediate importance. Since in the normal condition of the world there will be a margin of every population on the verge of starvation, it seems likely **that there will have to be a revision of the doctrine of the sanctity of the individual human life**. In the old days the doctors were under the obligation of doing all they could to preserve any life, though they had no great success in their efforts; now it is hardly too much to say that most diseases have come under control, or anyhow to judge by recent progress most of them soon will. But is the world the better for having a large number of healthy people dying of starvation, rather than letting them die of malaria? One of the justified boasts of recent times has been the great decrease that medicine has made in infant mortality. Whereas in the old days a mother might bear ten children and have only two survive, now she may bear only three and she will be regarded as very unlucky if all do not survive. But the difficulty in the world is going to be that the number of people born is too great for the food supplies, so that a fraction must die anyhow; may it not be better that they should die in infancy? **The truth is that all our present codes about the sanctity of human life are based on the security of life as it is at present, and once that is gone they will inevitably be revised, and the revision will probably shock most of our present opinion.**" [emphasis mine] - 185

[1] Quotes from Charles Galton Darwin, *The Next Million Years* (1952).

[2] Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN 0-415-10906-X

Note: I first heard about this book from talks given by Alan Watt at [Cutting Through The Matrix.com](http://CuttingThroughTheMatrix.com), an individual well worth looking into.

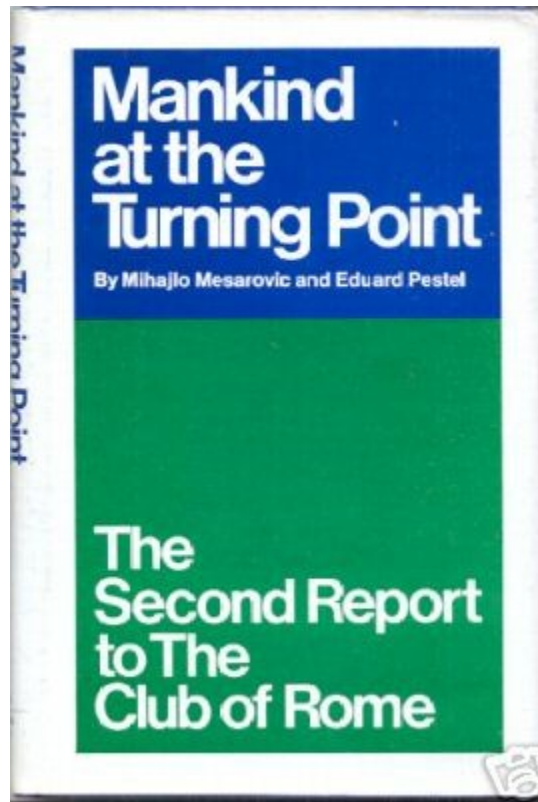
KNOWLEDGE DRIVEN REVOLUTION

Interdependence is Totalitarian

Mankind at the Turning Point Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

February 11, 2008



"The World Has Cancer And The Cancer Is Man" - A. Gregg as quoted in *Mankind at the Turning Point* (1974)

In 1974 the book *Mankind at the Turning Point: The Second Report to The Club of Rome* [1] was published. This report states the need to create an "organic" or a truly interdependent society as the only way to save the world from the almost overwhelming world *problematique*.

According to The Club of Rome, the world *problematique* is the set of interlocking world problems, such as, over population, food shortages, non-renewable resource depletion, environmental degradation, etc. With the use of absurd, exponentially based computer models, the complete unravelling of society and perhaps the biosphere was predicted. Not surprisingly the only solution capable of averting global catastrophe is the development of an organic society. As I will show, a global organic society is only a euphemism for totalitarian world government.

The Club of Rome is a premiere think tank composed of approximately 100 members including leading scientists, philosophers, political advisors and many other characters who lurk in the shadows of power.

Organic Growth

From *Mankind at the Turning Point*:

"In Nature organic growth proceeds according to a "master plan," a "blueprint." According to this master plan diversification among cells is determined by the requirements of the various organs; the size and shape of the organs and, therefore, their growth processes are determined by their function, which in turn depends on the needs of the whole organism.

Such a "master plan" is missing from the process of growth and development of the world system." - 7

"The concept of the "organic growth" of mankind, as we have proposed in this report, is intended **as a contribution toward achieving that end**. Were mankind to embark on a path of organic growth, the world would emerge as a system of interdependent and harmonious parts, each making its own unique contributions, be it in economics, resources, or culture.

...Such an approach must start from and preserve the world's regional diversity. Paths of development, region-specific rather than based on narrow national interests, must be designed to lead to a sustainable balance between the interdependent world-regions and to global harmony - that is, to mankind's growth as an "organic entity" from its present barely embryonic state." [emphasis mine] - VIII

"Apparently, the emerging world system requires a "holistic" view to be taken of the future world development: everything seems to depend on everything else." - 21

Interdependence is the End of Independence

Though rarely stated and frequently denied, the concept of interdependent nations implies the end of national independence or sovereignty.

"And cooperation, finally, requires that the people of all nations face up to an admission that may not come easy. Cooperation by definition connotes interdependence. Increasing interdependence between nations and regions must then translate as a decrease in independence. Nations cannot be interdependent without each of them giving up some of, or at least acknowledging limits to, its own independence." - 111

"...the statement acknowledged, even if unintentionally, the dawn of an era of limits to independence - even for the strongest and biggest nations of the world." - 114

Interdependence is Totalitarian

Bertrand Russell, a strong proponent of world government and all around elitist, wrote in his 1952 book *The Impact of Science on Society* [2] that the inevitable result of a society based on an organic philosophy can only result in totalitarianism. For more on this book [please read this](#).

From *The Impact of Science on Society*:

"The most obvious and inescapable effect of scientific technique is that it makes society more organic, in the sense of increasing the interdependence of its various parts..." - 42

"Totalitarianism has a theory as well as a practice. As a practice, it means that a certain group, having by one means or another seized the apparatus of power, especially armaments and police, proceed to exploit their advantageous position to the utmost, by regulating everything in the way that gives them the maximum of control over others. But as a theory it is something different: it is the doctrine that the State, or the nation, or the community is capable of a good different from that of individual and not consisting of anything that individuals think or feel. This doctrine was especially advocated by Hegel, who glorified the State, and thought that **a community should be as organic as possible**. In an organic community, he thought, excellence would reside in the whole. An individual is an organism, and we do not think that his separate parts have separate goods: if he has a pain in his great toe it is he that suffers, not specially the great toe. So, in an organic society, good and evil will belong to the whole rather than the parts. **This is the theoretical form of totalitarianism.**

...In concrete fact, when it is pretended that the State has a good different from that of the citizens, what is really meant is that the good of the government or of the ruling class is more important than that of other people. Such a view can have no basis except in arbitrary power.

More important than these metaphysical speculations is the question whether a scientific

dictatorship, such as we have been considering, can be stable, or is more likely to be stable than a democracy...

... I do not believe that dictatorship Is a lasting form of scientific society - **unless (but this proviso is important) it can become world-wide.**" [emphasis mine] - 64

A worldwide organic society is exactly what The Club of Rome is proposing.

Selling Totalitarianism

It is interesting to note the pleasant soothing words used to sell the concept of totalitarianism: "organic", "holistic", "differentiated", "harmonious", "interdependent", "balanced" and "sustainable". The very same "sustainable development" is all the rage these days. Sustainable development was codified into international law during the United Nations Conference on the Environment and Development (popularly known as the Rio Earth Summit) in 1992. The Secretary General and main organizer of the conference was Maurice Strong. According to his own book, *Where on Earth Are We Going?* [3] he is a "Member of the Executive Committee of the Club of Rome".

Creating A New Man and Total Material Interdependence

How do you make the transition to an organic society? [Part 2](#) of this series will examine the desires of The Club of Rome to change the value system of modern man.

"An analysis of problems and crises as reported in subsequent chapters indicate that (1) a "horizontal" restructuring of the world system is needed, i.e., a change in relationships among nations and regions and (2) as far as the "vertical" structure of the world system is concerned, drastic changes in the norm stratum - that is, **in the value system and the goals of man** - are necessary in order to solve energy, food, and other crises, i.e., **social changes and changes in individual attitudes** are needed if the transition to organic growth is to take place." [emphasis mine] - 54

[The final part of this series](#) will discuss the need for total control of all resources by a world authority.

"Now is the time to draw up a master plan for organic sustainable growth and world development based on **global allocation of all finite resources** and a new global economic system. Ten or twenty years from today it will probably be too late..." [emphasis mine] - 69

[1] Quotes from Mihajlo Mesarovic and Eduard Pestel, *Mankind at the Turning Point: The Second Report to The Club of Rome* (1974). ISBN 0-525-03945-7

[2] Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN 0-415-10906-X

[3] Quotes from Maurice Strong, *Where on Earth Are We Going?* (2000). ISBN 0-676-97364-7

Creating A One World Consciousness

Mankind at the Turning Point Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

February 18, 2008



"The modern crises are, in fact, man-made, and differ from many of their predecessors in that they **can** be dealt with." [emphasis in original] - Mankind at the Turning Point, 1974 (p15)

Mankind at the Turning Point: The Second Report to the Club of Rome [1] (1974) states their desire to create a unified organic (or interdependent) world system. This system is by definition totalitarian, as was discussed in [part one](#) of this series. Now that we know where we are headed, the next question is what will the transition look like?

The Club of Rome is a premiere think tank composed of approximately 100 members including leading scientists, philosophers, political advisors and many other characters who lurk in the shadows of power.

Machines of Doom and the End of Humanity

The focus of *Mankind at the Turning Point* is a computer model that supposedly replicates the major features of the world *problematique*. According to The Club of Rome, the world *problematique* is the set of interlocking world problems, such as, over population, food shortages, non-renewable resource depletion, environmental degradation, etc. Not surprisingly, their self serving model, based on exponential inputs, predicts the complete unravelling of society and perhaps the biosphere. Naturally, failure to implement The Club of Rome's solution of a totalitarian world government will result

in the potential end of humanity.

From *Mankind at the Turning Point*:

"Therefore we have concentrated our efforts in this report on a number of vital worldwide issues whose mastery we consider **essential for man's survival** and for an eventual transition into sustainable material and spiritual development of humanity." [emphasis mine] - XII

"Whether or not to embark on the path of organic growth is a question of **mankind's very survival...**" [emphasis mine] - 70

The Transition - Creating A New Mankind

The transition to this totalitarian world government will be made by changing the value systems of the entire planet, creating a one world consciousness.

"Today it seems that the basic values, which are ingrained in human societies of all ideologies and religious persuasions, are ultimately responsible for many of our troubles. But if future crises are to be avoided, **how then should these values be readjusted?**" [emphasis mine] - 11

"An analysis of problems and crises as reported in subsequent chapters indicate that (1) a "horizontal" restructuring of the world system is needed, i.e., a change in relationships among nations and regions and (2) as far as the "vertical" structure of the world system is concerned, drastic changes in the norm stratum - that is, in the **value system and the goals of man** - are necessary in order to solve energy, food, and other crises, i.e., **social changes and changes in individual attitudes** are needed if the transition to organic growth is to take place." [emphasis mine] - 54

"The changes in social and individual attitudes which we are recommending require a new kind of education..." - 148

"Development of a practical international framework in which the cooperation essential for **the emergence of a new mankind** on an organic growth path will become a matter of necessity rather than being left to good will and preference..." [emphasis mine] - 145

"The transition from the present undifferentiated and unbalanced world growth to organic growth will lead to **the creation of a new mankind** [emphasis mine]. Such a transition would represent a dawn, not a doom, a beginning not the end. Will mankind have the wisdom and will power to evolve a sound strategy to achieve that transition? In view of historical precedents, one might, legitimately, have serious doubts - **unless the transition evolves out of necessity. And this is where the current and future crises - in energy, food, materials, and the rest - can become error-detectors, catalysts for change, and as such blessings in disguise. The solutions of these crises will determine on which of the two paths mankind has chosen to travel.**" [emphasis in original] - 9

The Transition - One World Consciousness

"Regarding individual values and attitudes the following lessons seem to be outstanding for the **new global ethic** implicit in the preceding requirements:

1) **A world consciousness must be developed through which every individual realizes his role as a member of the world community...** It must become part of the consciousness of **every individual** that "the basic unit of human cooperation and hence survival is **moving from the national to the global level.**"

2) A new ethic in the use of material resources must be developed which will result in a style of life compatible with the oncoming age of scarcity... One should be proud of saving and conserving rather than of spending and discarding.

3) **An attitude toward nature must be developed based on harmony rather than conquest.** Only in this way can man apply in practice what is already accepted in theory - that is, that man is an integral part of nature.

4) If the human species is to survive, man must develop a sense of identification with future generations and be ready to trade benefits to the next generations for the benefits to himself. If each generation aims at maximum good for itself, Homo Sapiens is as good as doomed." [emphasis mine] - 147

"In order to achieve balance between regions in global development a more coherent regional outlook must be developed in various parts of the world so that the "preferable solutions" will be arrived at out of necessity rather than out of good will... **we are talking about a regional sense of common destiny** that will find its expression through appropriate societal, economic concepts and objectives... **Such a regional outlook will create a "critical mass" necessary for the practical implementation of new and innovative ways of functioning in cultural, economic, and agricultural areas,** especially on the rural level." [emphasis mine] - 154

The Transition - Global Warming and the New Mankind

This methodology of doom prediction based on complex, "expert" generated, unverifiable computer models was later taken in full stride by the global warming propagandists. Both had the exact same intent, scare people into believing that the world was on the verge of complete collapse and that the only solution is world government. In reality, the global warming myth is an extension of The Club of Rome's activities

From *Mankind at the Turning Point*:

"Governments and international organizations are currently too preoccupied with military alliances and bloc politics. But this problem is becoming of secondary importance... Therefore, barring suicide, mankind will face the most awesome test in its history: **the necessity of a change in the man-nature relationship and the emergence of a new**

perception of mankind as a living global system." [emphasis mine] - 146

"Precisely because the symptoms of these global crises might become fully visible only toward the end of the century, the time to act is now; when the symptoms become clear the remedy will no longer be possible, as has been shown repeatedly in this report.

Future history will not focus on personality and social classes, as has been characteristic of history in the past, but on the use of resources and survival of the human species. The time to affect that history is now." [emphasis mine] - 146

The quote above cannot be emphasized enough. The fear that has been used to unify our national societies is being moved from the Hitler/Saddam Hussein type personalities and the Communist/Capitalist class struggles to global unity based on resource depletion and the survival of the human species.

Furthermore, in 1991, in a book entitled *The First Global Revolution: A Report by the Council of The Club of Rome* [2] and coauthored by one of the founders of The Club of Rome, Alexander King, they admitted choosing global warming and other threats to unify humanity under a world government.

"In searching for a new enemy to unite us [all of humanity], **we came up with the idea that pollution, the threat of global warming, water shortages, famine and the like would fit the bill.** In their totality and in their interactions, these phenomena constitute a common threat which as the enemy, we fall into the trap about which we have already warned, namely mistaking symptoms for causes. All these dangers are caused by human intervention and it is only through changed attitudes and behaviour that they can be overcome. **The real enemy then is humanity itself.**" [emphasis mine]

[1] Quotes from Mihajlo Mesarovic and Eduard Pestel, *Mankind at the Turning Point: The Second Report to The Club of Rome* (1974). ISBN 0-525-03945-7

[2] Quotes from Alexander King and Bertrand Schneider, *The First Global Revolution: A Report by the Council of The Club of Rome* (1991). ISBN 0-671-71107-5

A Planned World Economy

Mankind at the Turning Point Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

February 25, 2008

"The human race is getting to be too much for itself and too much for the world." - William Saroyan as quoted in *Mankind at the Turning Point* (1974)

Mankind at the Turning Point used an absurd, exponentially based computer model of the world system in an attempt to hide their predetermined conclusions behind the vale of science. One of the main scenarios developed by the model was an analysis of the price of oil. This was an obvious choice due to the importance of oil to the world economy and the Middle East oil crisis which began the previous year (1973). The conclusion of this analysis was that an optimal price exists for oil. A price too high, would encourage development of alternatives and result in long-term losses to the exporting nations. A price too low, would encourage over use and resource depletion which would result in long-term losses of the importing nations who would not have sufficient time to develop alternatives. Therefore, there existed an "optimal" price for oil and that the only way to obtain this price was through cooperation. Naturally, an optimal price would exist for all commodities and the only way to obtain these prices was a planned world economy. After all, a planned economy was working so well in the Soviet Union, why not extend it to the rest of the world?



Mankind at the Turning Point used an absurd, exponentially based computer model of the world system in an attempt to hide their predetermined conclusions behind the vale of science. One of the main scenarios developed by the model was an analysis of the price of oil. This was an obvious choice due to the importance of oil to the world economy and the Middle East oil crisis which began the previous year (1973). The conclusion of this analysis was that an optimal price exists for oil. A price too high, would encourage development of alternatives and result in long-term losses to the exporting nations. A

price too low, would encourage over use and resource depletion which would result in long-term losses of the importing nations who would not have sufficient time to develop alternatives. Therefore, there existed an "optimal" price for oil and that the only way to obtain this price was through cooperation. Naturally, an optimal price would exist for all commodities and the only way to obtain these prices was a planned world economy. After all, a planned economy was working so well in the Soviet Union, why not extend it to the rest of the world?

KNOWLEDGE DRIVEN REVOLUTION

What Does a World Governed by Humanistic Socialism Look Like?

Reshaping the International Order Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

April 7, 2008



"The establishment of a New International Economic Order entails fundamental changes in political, social, cultural and other aspects of society, changes which would bring about a New International Order." - *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*, 1976 (p5)

The Club of Rome is a premiere think tank composed of approximately 100 members including leading scientists, philosophers, political advisors, former politicians and many other influential bureaucrats and technocrats. This series of articles describes the major conclusions of the 1976 book *Rio: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* [1] coordinated by Nobel Laureate Jan Tinbergen. The RIO report "addresses the following question: what new international order should be recommended to the world's statesmen and social groups so as to meet, to the extent practically and realistically possible, the urgent needs of today's population and the probable needs of future generations?"

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Many in the RIO group believe that this equitable social order could best be described as *humanistic socialism*..." - 63

So what exactly does a new social order based on "humanistic socialism" look like? Below is the RIO group's own description of what the future should look like.

Collective Workers and Full Employment

"Society must also deliberately aim at creating *employment* for all those seeking it and at ensuring that the distribution over different types of jobs achieves a balance between the satisfaction derived from the job and the satisfaction of the needs of society. The latter necessitates that certain unpleasant (heavy, dirty, dangerous) activities be performed. If these activities can be learnt relatively easily, **they could be performed by all citizens**. Their efforts could be organized in the form of 'land' or '**neighbourhood armies**' for **work in rural areas**, in the field of environmental care..." - 69

"A full employment policy should be adopted by all governments as part of their development plan." - 145

"As a counterpart to these rights, a number of duties must be accepted, especially **the duty to use one's capacities in the interest of an adequate level of production**..." - 63

"Public power should be used to ensure that education is geared to meet the needs of individuals and the needs of society, that is, all individuals. **The supply of qualified types of labour should be so planned as to equal, to the greatest extent possible, the demand for them by society** (i.e. by the 'organizers of production')." - 69

A Planned World Economy

"Effective application of public power implies the need for *middle and long-range planning* at different levels... The UN Economic and Social Council might be best suited for undertaking such a task, perhaps assisted by the UN Development Planning

Committee." - 70

"At the highest level, the level of world affairs, international institutions **must** form the prime movers of **planned change**." - 100

"... the optimum utilization of human and physical resources in the world as a whole." - 140

"One of the basic questions which today faces the international community is whether it should accelerate the process of this evolution and consciously put in place the various elements of **a system for global planning and the management of resources**...

The achievement of this global planning and management system calls for the conscious *transfer of power* - a gradual transfer to be sure - from the nation State to the world organization. Only when this transfer takes place can the organization become effective and purposeful." - 184

Private Sector and Global Free Trade

"New forms of cooperation between private initiative and public authorities will have to be characterized by a certain balance of power..." - 280

"In the trade field, an International Trade and Development Organization, formed by expanding the responsibilities of UNCTAD [United Nations Conference on Trade and Development], should be set up with a very broad mandate for overall coordination of policy issues relating to international trade in primary commodities and manufactured goods. Likewise, UNIDO's [United Nations Industrial Development Organization] responsibilities should be increased to enable it to participate in the planning of a more equitable world industrial order;..." - 184

"This [Third World development] implies that, if a new international order is to be created, the rich nations must be prepared to give up part of their future productive capacity. To be able to do this smoothly they will need to resort to **adjustment policies** and such policies must form part of their development strategies... The creation of an **optimal international division of labour**, and as such the selective development of economic activities in Third World countries, calls for the substantial extension of such adjustment policies...

It is no longer desirable that the industrialized countries adopt policies of protecting their labour-intensive industries in the manufacturing sector. Rather, they should seek, as must the Third World, to develop those industries in which they have a comparative advantage...

The process described, albeit with distortions, is already taking place: some sectors of Western manufacturing industry are moving to Third World countries. The movement of Western European garment industries to North Africa is a case in point. As such, private

initiative will no doubt prove responsible for a large part of the adjustment required. That adjustments are at present insufficient is witnessed by the millions of workers who migrate from the Third World to seek employment in the Western industrialized nations. To the extent that the adjustments brought about by private initiative on the strength of international market forces will be inadequate, and in view of the fact that private enterprises may not be sufficiently creative nor responsive to the needs of countries, adjustment must be stimulated and guided by selective taxes and subsidies. Subsidies should be offered to those industries with a clear potential for contributing to a country's or a regions' development efforts. Such subsidies could aim at supporting changes, where necessary, in the production mix of enterprises...

To ensure the effectiveness of adjustment policies, there is a clear need for coordination of policies both between the industrialized countries and between public authorities and the private sector..." - 112

"The industrialized countries, on their part, will have to introduce *policies of adjustment*, develop specialization in knowledge-intensive products and gradually **introduce and enforce environmental protection standards**." - 143

"In the long term, transnational enterprises will still form part of the world structure, in either their present form of private enterprises or in a renovated form comprising genuine international ventures." - 160

Public International Enterprises

"The possibility of genuine internationalization of some transnational enterprises or transnational operations should be further investigated. **They could be owned, controlled and managed by an international development authority**. The pharmaceutical industry could be used as an initial test case for analysis because of its international social implications." - 281

"Active sharing of benefits [of the ocean], with particular regard to the needs of the less developed countries, through a variety of devices including *international public enterprises*, especially *for fishing and offshore oil production; international tax on ocean uses*, etc." - 175

Consumption Patterns

"The rich nations... must develop new consumption styles which are less wasteful, less resource - intensive and geared to the consumption of **social services** rather than of superfluous consumer durables." - 183

"Growth in equality would make it less difficult for people to accept the principle of self-restraint in the satisfaction of material needs, **the ideological cornerstone of the future 'steady state'**. It would equally create the necessary social conditions for self-control of family size and the consequent reduction in population pressure; birth-control campaigns

are likely to remain largely ineffective (unless enforced by coercion, which is clearly unacceptable) up to the time that **peasants** are freed from material insecurity, that infant mortality rates go down, and that the use of unpaid child labour is no longer necessary to make ends meet." - 162

"Ultimately, they must aim to construct their policies on a series of 'maxima' which define an appropriate style of civilized living in a world of deprivation and declare that all consumption beyond that fixed maxima is not only waste but a conscious action against the welfare of large numbers of poor and disprivileged, their own children, and the prospects for a peaceful world." - 76

Financial and Monetary Change

"(a) The gradual introduction of a **system of international taxation which should be handled by a World Treasury**, both to meet the current as well as the development needs of the poorer nations;

(b) **The creation of an international reserve currency by an international authority, such as an International Central Bank**, which should be under international management without being dominated by the interests of one particular group of nations;" -184

"The statutes of transnational enterprises should be under the supervision of, and their profits taxed by, an inter- or supranational authority." - 160

More on the proposed changes to the financial system in part 2 of this series entitled: [Reshaping the International Financial Order](#).

International Control of All Mineral Resources - The Common Heritage of Mankind Concept

"In the long term, and assuming progress towards the creation of an equitable international economic and social order leading to a **pooling of material and non-material resources, mineral resources will need to be viewed as a common heritage of mankind**. This concept implies both a real world market for all mineral resources and a system of world taxation to replace national mining taxation. The revenues collected should be redistributed among Third World countries - possibly through such an agency as IDA [International Development Association - World Bank group]...

This tax could, for instance, be introduced as one of a moderate rate and gradually be raised to something in the order of 70 per cent of profits on fossil fuels and 50 per cent of the value of production of ores (including uranium).

Such a tax would, like the present taxes on oil products, in fact be paid by the consumers...

Such a tax, at the rates proposed, would probably induce consumers to restrict their consumption of mineral raw materials..." - 148

"It is now recognized that a more elaborate system of careful husbandry and management of raw materials and scarce resources is inevitable." - 244

The redefinition of sovereignty from "territorial sovereignty" to "functional sovereignty" as well as the establishment and expansion of the concept of the "common heritage of mankind" is discussed in more detail in part 3 of this series entitled: ["Functional" Sovereignty and the Common Heritage of Mankind](#).

Reshaping Public Opinion

"Public opinion is **no phenomenon sui generis**. It is in part the result of government policies and by definition politicians cannot hide behind their own creation. **If some sectors of public opinion in the industrialized countries are immersed in the rhetoric and slogans associated with misunderstanding, then much of this may be inherited from their political leaders.** And if these leaders are in part responsible for a situation which impedes acceptance of the need for change, then they themselves must be held responsible for changing this situation." - 110

The reshaping of public opinion and the importance of the scientist and experts is further described in part 4 of this series entitled: [Reshaping Public Opinion and the White Coated Propagandists](#).

World Food Authority

"A number of measures have been proposed which should bring greater planning and coordination in the field of domestic food production and international supplies of food, including the establishment of world grain reserves... In the last analysis, it may require the setting up of a **World Food Authority** to supervise this vital area of human activity and survival" - 184

More on the establishment and functioning of the World Food Authority in part 5 of this series entitled: [Population Control and the World Food Authority](#).

A Glimpse into the New Order

[The final article](#) in this series will examine a wide range of topics including: regional unions, world solidarity, foundations of the international legal system, freedom and the establishment of an standing United Nations military.

[1] Quotes from Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3

Reshaping the International Financial Order

Reshaping the International Order Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

April 14, 2008

"Among the instruments of implementation at the international level, I attach the highest priority to the introduction of international taxation and the establishment of an international central bank." - Mahbub ul Haq, Director of Policy Planning World Bank (1970-1982) and RIO Member (p321)



Creation of a World Reserve Currency

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Phasing out of national reserve currencies as well as gold from reserve creation, confining increasingly the latter to SDR [Special Drawing Rights] type assets created by joint decisions..." - 128

"The residual use of gold as a reserve stock for central banks should and will be phased out gradually." - 199

"The creation of an **international reserve currency by an international authority, such as an International Central Bank, which should be under international management** without being dominated by the interests of one particular group of nations;" - 184

"Fundamental reforms in the international monetary system so that international liquidity is not created in such an unplanned fashion that it generates alternate cycles of inflation, stagflation and depression. If **national reserve currencies are replaced by an international reserve currency**, to be created and managed by the international community in line with the genuine needs for the growth of the international economic system and with special regard to the pressing needs of the Third World, it can considerably help in avoiding some of the present unplanned fluctuations in economic activity." - 183

Some tricks never seem to get old. Prevention of "alternate cycles of inflation, stagflation and depression" is exactly the same hogwash used to sell the Federal Reserve Act to the Americans in 1913. How well did that work?

Creation of a World Treasury and Global Taxation

"It also follows that some groups must today devote their efforts to the preparation of long range proposals in order to ensure that they will be operative on time. This applies especially to investigations into the feasibility of the more ambitious long range proposals, such as the creation of a World Treasury." - 125

"The gradual introduction of a system of international taxation which should be handled by a World Treasury, both to meet the current as well as the development needs of the poorer nations;" - 184

"The statutes of transnational enterprises should be under the supervision of, and their profits taxed by, an inter- or supranational authority." - 160

"international commons... ocean-tolls and air-tolls should be considered..." - 165

"these observations would suggest that, in the long run, a *World Treasury* could form an effective instrument for attaining some of the aims of an international community. In that it would operate from a current budget of expenditures, it would require a current budget of income. This would be derived from two obvious sources: revenue from *international taxes* and from the world community's *ownership of productive resources*. Taxes and incomes, profits, the use of scarce resources and the royalties received from concessions could figure among the most important types of revenue." - 131

"Ultimately, there is a need for the equivalent of a World Treasury, the resources of which are derived from international taxation and ownership of international productive resources (such as the resources of the oceans)." - 133

Some Techniques of Implementation

One implementation technique requires the use of "pioneering" countries to voluntarily submit to international taxation and their new monetary order.

"A desirable form of international decision-making, however, is one in which a genuinely supranational *authority* takes decisions on a qualified majority principle. A qualified majority may comprise a system of weighted votes, be based on a simple majority, or based on a system in which not only the total number of representatives but also the representatives of some well defined groups must together form a majority... (b) A decision-making body can be initiated by several *pioneering* countries on a *voluntary* basis and then be gradually extended. Some of the means used could first be applied at low levels, for example, a *tax* on consumer durables, and be gradually *raised* and extended to include more categories and eventually more countries. (c) Membership of an international decision-making body should be open to both public authorities and private organizations, whether non-profit or profit-making, or a combination of these categories."
- 104

Another technique of implementation requires the use of organizations like OPEC to collect international taxes on behalf of the world community.

"The Financing of Development: A new framework for international resource transfers form an essential part of the effort to establish a new international order. It will take time to negotiate such a framework and put its various elements in place, but at least some of the principles on which this framework should be based can be spelt out. (I) An element of *automation* must be built into the resource transfer system. To be realistic, the world community is still too early in its stage of evolution and recognition of its interdependence to accept the concept of international taxation of the rich nations for the benefit of the poor nations. **But the concept need not be accepted in its entirety: it can be introduced gradually over time** through a variety of devices:... (b) certain *sources of international financing* can be developed - such as tax on non-renewable resources, tax on international pollutants... (c) if the rich industrialized nations are unwilling to tax themselves, *others* can collect and distribute these tax proceeds on the basis of what the rich nations consume - e.g. even a one-dollar per barrel 'development levy' by OPEC..." - 216

One World Currency

"The Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States... already lays down the fundamental principles which should govern international economic relations. The transformation, over time, of the Charter into the proposed framework treaty would greatly facilitate the establishment of a new international order. If this is to be done, some more specific provisions, omitted from the Charter, should be considered for inclusion in the framework treaty. Such provisions could include:...

(g) All States shall accept an international currency to be created by an international authority;" - 117

The Club of Rome is currently working on a project entitled [Monetary Simplification Euro/Dollar: Towards a Global Currency](#) headed by Ramon Tamames.

Conclusion

[The next part](#) in this series addresses the redefinition of sovereignty from "territorial sovereignty" to "functional sovereignty" as well as the use of the concept of the "common heritage of mankind" to gain international control of not just the oceans, atmosphere and outer space but also all material and non-material resources. [Part 4](#) discusses the generation of public opinion and the use of white coated propagandists. The creation of a World Food Authority and its use for population control is examined in [part 5](#). The [final article](#) in this series deals with a variety of issues including global solidarity, regional unions, legal changes and a standing United Nations Peace Force.

[1] Quotes from Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3

"Functional" Sovereignty and the Common Heritage of Mankind

Reshaping the International Order Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

April 21, 2008



"The achievement of this global planning and management system calls for the conscious *transfer of power* - a gradual transfer to be sure - from the nation State to the world

organization. Only when this transfer takes place can the organization become effective and purposeful." - *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*, 1976 (p185)

Territorial Sovereignty versus Functional Sovereignty

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Given the growing list of problems confronting mankind, every effort must be made to stimulate processes which point in directions which can be deemed desirable. This would certainly apply, for example, to the tendency towards the increasing centralization of decision-making involving issues beyond national frontiers should be viewed as a logical continuation of the process of change and a precondition for the effective assertion of national sovereignty." - 103

The "increasing centralization of [international] decision-making" being a "precondition for the effective assertion of national sovereignty" may seem contradictory. The reason for this misunderstanding is your definition of sovereignty is based on an apparently outdated "territorial sovereignty" instead of the much more modern and politically correct "functional sovereignty".

"In other words, the traditional concept of territorial sovereignty should be replaced by the concept of *functional sovereignty*, which distinguishes jurisdiction over specific uses from sovereignty over geographic space. This would permit the interweaving of national jurisdiction and international competences within the same territorial space and open the possibility of applying the concept of the common heritage of mankind both beyond and within the limits of national jurisdiction." - 172

That is right, "sovereignty" no longer involves governmental control within a geographic space, rather it refers to governmental control of specific functions within a geographic space. Which functions would depend on the dictates of a world authority.

"Acceptance of these elements calls for a reinterpretation of the concept of national sovereignty. Participation and social control suggest a *functional* rather than a territorial interpretation of sovereignty, or jurisdiction over determined uses rather than geographical space. Conceptually, **this interpretation will make possible the progressive internationalization and socialization of all world resources - material and non-material - based upon the 'common heritage of mankind' principle.** It also permits the secure accommodation of inclusive and exclusive uses of these resources, or, in other words, the interweaving of national and international jurisdiction within the same territorial space... Ultimately, we must air for *decentralized sovereignty* with the network of strong international institutions which will make it possible." - 82

Common Heritage of Mankind as "Functional Ownership"

"... the new concepts of functional sovereignty and functional ownership (common heritage of mankind)." - 314

"The [Communist Yugoslavian] concept of social ownership and its attributes are clearly applicable to the 'common heritage' concept." - 81

"Effective planning and management calls for the fundamental restructuring of the United Nations so as to give it broad economic powers and a more decisive mandate for international economic decision-making... It is also hoped that major changes in the United Nations structure will be made over the next decade so that it is not only able to play a more forceful role in world political affairs but it is also able to become more of a World Development Authority in managing the socio-economic affairs of the international community. ... The most effective way of articulating the planning and management functions of this organization would be through a functional confederation of international organizations, based upon existing, restructured and, in some instances, new United Nations agencies - to be linked through an integrative machinery. This system and its machinery, if it is really to reflect interdependencies between nations and solidarity between peoples, **should ultimately aim at the pooling and sharing of all resources, material and non-material, including means of production**, with a view to ensuring effective planning and management of the world economy and of global resource use in a way which would meet the essential objectives of equity and efficiency." - 185

"In the long term, and assuming progress towards the creation of an equitable international economic and social order leading to **a pooling of material and non-material resources, mineral resources will need to be viewed as a common heritage of mankind**. This concept implies both a real world market for all mineral resources and a system of world taxation to replace national mining taxation. The revenues collected should be redistributed among Third World countries - possibly through such an agency as IDA [International Development Association - World Bank group]...

This tax could, for instance, be introduced as one of a moderate rate and gradually be raised to something in the order of 70 per cent of profits on fossil fuels and 50 per cent of the value of production of ores (including uranium).

Such a tax would, like the present taxes on oil products, in fact be paid by the consumers...

Such a tax, at the rates proposed, would probably induce consumers to restrict their consumption of mineral raw materials..." - 148

This concept includes the manipulation of the Third World "national liberation" movements in the post colonial era. These are only stepping stones toward "functional sovereignty".

"[Third World territorial sovereignty] is a weapon which must be used in the struggle for a new international order." - 247

"After the exercise of national sovereignty by Third World countries over their national resources has helped to establish more equality between mineral producing and consuming countries, **a switch to the concept of the 'common heritage of mankind' is recommended and a gradual transformation of the principle of territorial sovereignty into functional sovereignty. This must be viewed as the most desirable approach to the world management of national and other resources, material and non-material.**" - 150

"Sovereignty and the Common Heritage of Mankind... the first objective to be achieved is the attainment by Third World countries of full sovereignty over their resources in compliance with the UNCERDS [United Nations Charter of the Economic Rights and Duties of States]. Only after this objective has been achieved can the concept of the common heritage of mankind, traditionally limited to resources considered as *res nullius* such as **the oceans and outer space, be expanded to new domains such as mineral resources, science and technology, means of production and other sources of wealth.** After the exercise of national sovereignty has contributed toward the creation of a more equitable international order, the aim should be to pool all world resources - material and non-material - with a view to ensuring effective planning and management of the world economy and of global resource use in a way which would meet the dual objectives of equity and efficiency. In this perspective resources would need to be managed on the basis of decentralized planetary sovereignty. Proposals contained in the following chapters for the application of the common heritage concept to particular fields should thus be viewed in this broader context." - 123

Remember when you hear the term "Common Heritage of Mankind" it does not just refer to the oceans, atmosphere and outer space, it refers to all material and non-material resources. Anything that might be considered a source of wealth would be brought under strict international authority. Keep in mind non-material resources includes, among other things, the education of "human resources".

Conclusion

[The next part](#) in this series discusses the generation of public opinion and the use of white coated propagandists. The creation of a World Food Authority and its use for population control is examined in [part 5](#). The [final article](#) in this series deals with a variety of issues including global solidarity, regional unions, legal changes and a standing United Nations Peace Force.

[1] Quotes from Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3

Reshaping Public Opinion and the White Coated Propagandists

Reshaping the International Order Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

April 28, 2008

"Atomic and political scientists from Harvard University and MIT meeting in November 1975 concluded that an atomic war will certainly occur before the year 2000. This, they believed, could only be prevented by the decision of all nation-states to surrender their sovereignty to an authoritarian world government, a possibility they viewed as unlikely."
- *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*, 1976 (p46)



Importance of Public Opinion

Any attempt at creating a new international order requires the reshaping of public opinion from their current modes of thought into newer more appropriate forms. This important detail was not overlooked by The Club of Rome.

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"The possibility of implementing ideas of a new power structure would, in democratic societies, necessitate the acceptance of such ideas by wide sections of public opinion. It is

of paramount importance, therefore, that new ways and means be found to establish, within industrialized countries, contacts between formal and informal groups of concerned citizens, scientists and politicians..." - 109

"*Political feasibility*. Crucially important especially during the early phases of the transformation of the existing order..." - 101

"Development implies a constant destruction of sociological and psychological structures. The real problem of development is cleverly to balance positive and real improvements with severe destructions... It is the responsibility of every nation to make its own choice between economic progress and socio-psych structure destructions, and to define its own fundamental objectives for real development, which is the development of man as a totality and of the totality of men." - (Part of RIO member Maurice Guernier's position statement) - 321

"The satisfaction of needs implies that each person available for and willing to work should have an adequately remunerated job... Education is the most important non-material component for fulfilling individual ambitions... At a higher level, education not only contributes directly to individual satisfaction by developing that individual's spiritual endowment, but also indirectly by **preparing the individual, mentally as well as morally, for a future role in a changing world...**" - 64

Reshaping Public Opinion

Public opinion is not generated from the public, but rather given to them from politicians, experts, fiction, news media, etc.

"Public opinion is **no phenomenon sui generis**. It is in part the result of government policies and by definition politicians cannot hide behind their own creation. **If some sectors of public opinion in the industrialized countries are immersed in the rhetoric and slogans associated with misunderstanding, then much of this may be inherited from their political leaders.** And if these leaders are in part responsible for a situation which impedes acceptance of the need for change, then they themselves must be held responsible for changing this situation." - 110

No Technocracy, Just White Coated Propagandists

"One of our main weapons in this search is the vast arsenal of scientists we are potentially able to deploy. To fully utilize this resource, we must deliberately choose to focus investigation in directions **we believe** to be really *relevant*." - 107

"In political process too, the search for 'new combinations' can be expected to produce valuable results. Such a search is likely to demonstrate the responsibilities which scientists and other specialists have, not only to their nations, but also to the constituency of mankind. In the past, specialists have often been reluctant to engage in political debate or to share their knowledge and fears with the general public. Given social dilemmas,

they have often preferred to adopt neutral rather than value positions, to tacitly advise rather than openly advocate. This generalization no longer holds true. In many branches of science there are radical movements. Increasingly, both in the rich and poor worlds, scientists are involved in active advocacy which they see as an intellectual and ethical duty.

These observations suggest that specialists be provided with greater opportunities to participate in the making of decisions in areas of vital importance to the future of mankind. This is not to suggest the creation of a technocracy nor that political will can ever be substituted by scientific expertise... Specialists must serve as 'advocates of the unborn' and the expansion of their role can be viewed as an example of *functional representation* in international decision-making.

Not only must specialists advocate courses of action in international fora, they must also more fully commit themselves to development efforts at the local level. Their commitment must be total, their allegiance to a problem or community unstinting. Experts operating through bilateral and multilateral channels have not always met these requirements. The 'new expert', in actively promoting local self-reliant development, **may need to subordinate his own values even his knowledge**, to those of the community he is attempting to serve. We have seen the rise of 'barefoot doctors'; we must encourage the rise of 'barefoot experts'." - 108

The above quote clearly states that the "new experts" should form a league of white coated propagandists willing to subordinate their knowledge (the only thing they have to offer) to a desired political agenda. It should also be noted the use of the term "functional representation". This is significant because the Club of Rome redefines sovereignty from what they call "territorial sovereignty" to "functional sovereignty" completely changing the meaning of sovereignty. More on the redefinition of sovereignty [here](#).

Using Other Groups

"The most important options for organizing institutions lie in three main areas. The first relates to the way in which the means of operating society are grouped into *bunches* which can appropriately be handled by one institution. **From the viewpoint of efficiency, the most suitable approach would be to group together those means requiring similar techniques of control.** The second option concerns the various levels of decision-making and the hierarchy corresponding to it. This important structural consideration applies to single institutions as well as to the **relationship between persons** and between institutions. ... Third... Membership should **not** be limited to national governments; it should also embrace non-governmental organizations of many kinds operating at different levels." - 101

"Whereas national public opinion may exist in the singular, internationally it exists in the plural... Groups of many different kinds, both in and outside the production process - students, trade unions, scientists - from both the Third World and the industrialized countries should join forces in their attempts to shape public and political opinion. **The**

aim here must be the internationalization of attempts at 'conscience-raising'. There would appear to be tremendous scope for a range of non-governmental organizations in this field and for cooperation among them." - 111

"... a conscious attempt must be made to organize intellectual and political lobbies to re-educate international public and political opinion." - 177

"Convincing Public and Political Opinion: Coordinated and intensified effort should be made, particularly in industrialized countries, to publicize the need to create an international social and economic order which is **perceived** as more equitable by all peoples. ... The primary task of many non-governmental organizations must be to undertake the effort suggested." - 122

The Ministry of Third World Truth

The Club of Rome proposes the creation of a Ministry of Third World Truth to help shape international public opinion.

"Such reform [of news media] should include the creation of a Third World information centre to specifically serve Third World needs and to facilitate the dissemination of information on the Third World, both in industrialized and Third World countries." - 111

Conclusion

The creation of a World Food Authority and its use for population control is examined in [part 5](#). The [final article](#) in this series deals with a variety of issues including global solidarity, regional unions, legal changes and a standing United Nations Peace Force.

[1] Quotes from Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3

Population Control and a World Food Authority

Reshaping the International Order Part 5

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

May 5, 2008

"... it is of utmost importance that an equilibrium be established between the world's total population and the capacity of 'spaceship earth'..." - *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*, 1976 (p124)

The establishment of a World Food Authority to control the food supply of the world is a major goal of The Club of Rome's RIO report. This issue is intertwined with exaggerated fears of environmental collapse and the elite's obsession with population control.



The Environmental Scare

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"History has frequently shown that people, in times of crisis and once convinced of the necessity for change, are prepared to accept policies which demand changes in their behaviour so as to help secure better lives for themselves and their children." - 110

The threat of environmental catastrophe to further the population control agenda is nothing new and continues to this day with the manmade global warming scare. Back in the 1970's the Club of Rome was not shy at using the environmental catastrophe card to push for population control. Below are some examples from *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

"Moreover, it has been estimated that by 1985 all land surfaces, except those so cold or at such high altitudes as to be incompatible with human habitation or exploration, will have been occupied and utilized by man." - 89

"Although not yet proven, climatologists are being forced to conclude that our planet has in recent times passed through a period which may well have been optimal as far as food production is concerned. They believe that future decades may well be characterized by

extremes - hot and cold, wet and dry - without necessarily a change in average temperature. (4)" - 90

The endnote used to back up this claim is given below:

"(4) There is certainly sufficient evidence for this concern: the Asian monsoons were unsatisfactory for three successive years between 1972-1974; severe droughts in the Sahel and other parts of Africa and the Great Plains area of the United States and Canada in 1974; an unexpected late frost in Brazil in 1975 which may have destroyed as much as 60 per cent of its 1976 coffee crop. The growing season of the best grain producing areas in the Soviet Union is now believed to [be] about a week shorter than it was in the 1950's; an even more pronounced shift appears to have taken place in the United Kingdom." - 97

Do these types of arguments sound familiar?

"Much effort has been made in the past ten years, in some industrialized countries, to bring the disadvantage facing many Third World countries to the attention of large numbers of people. If it has met with only limited success, it is probably because it has failed to bring out **the concept of interdependence of countries and issues**. More attention must in future be focused on information and education on how our planet functions and on the '**survival fact**' that **the claim of the whole is wider and deeper than the claim of any of its parts**. There is also a fundamental need to develop a broadly educated political class which is capable of understanding science and the broad implications, possibilities and dangers of technological advance, and which can harness technological advance for constructive social purposes." - 111

Population Control and The World Food Authority

"... these threats [of food shortage] might well be exacerbated by increasing population pressures and deteriorating climatological conditions." - 135

"Population control policies carry the important indirect consequence of restricting the supply of unskilled labour, thereby raising its price." - 73

"If the world is to be liberated from the continual nightmares of hunger and malnutrition, these and the various measures proposed by the FAO [Food and Agricultural Organization] Worlds Food Conference should be implemented to the full and call for the creation of the *World Food Authority*, with **extensive and real powers**; or, as a second best, the World Food Council proposed by the World Food Conference." - 138

"internationally owned and internationally managed [food] buffer stocks..." - 226

"the question of introducing meat rationing should be seriously considered [for developed countries]." - 227

Food as a Weapon

The incredible power that would be accomplished from a massive concentration of food stocks under the control of a single agency did not escape the authors of this report to the Club of Rome. The reigning food situation in the world was dominated by the great dependence of many countries on the North American breadbasket. This gave the Americans a considerable amount of power over their dependent countries.

"the American Secretary for Agriculture who has observed: "Food is a weapon. It is one of the principal tools in our negotiating kit" " - 29

The further centralization of food stocks under a single international power would only increase the abuse of food supplies not decrease it. This, quite naturally, is the point. The result of this control is well described by Bertrand Russell ([who strongly supported this idea](#)) in his 1952 book *The Impact of Science of Society* [2]:

"To deal with this problem [increasing population and decreasing food supplies] it will be necessary to find ways of preventing an increase in world population. If this is to be done otherwise than by wars, pestilence, and famines, it will demand a powerful international authority. This authority should deal out the world's food to the various nations in proportion to their population at the time of the establishment of the authority. If any nation subsequently increased its population it should not on that account receive any more food. The motive for not increasing population would therefore be very compelling. What method of preventing an increase might be preferred should be left to each state to decide." - 124

Conclusion

The [final article](#) in this series deals with a variety of issues including global solidarity, regional unions, legal changes and a standing United Nations Peace Force.

[1] Quotes from Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3

[2] Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN 0-415-10906-X

A Glimpse into the New Order

Reshaping the International Order Part 6

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

May 12, 2008



"To obtain an equitable international social and economic order efforts will to be made by everyone... every single member of the world's population." - *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*, 1976 (p100)

This article examines a variety of issues derived from a report to The Club of Rome entitled *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*. These issues include legal changes for a new social order, regional unions, global solidarity, the East-West dialectic, a standing United Nations Peace Force and the redefinition of rights and freedom.

Legal Foundation of the New Order

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"The legal challenge posed by the new international order can be viewed as the transformation of a **system of law based upon Western European culture into the law of the world community**. ... The [legal] treaty would not represent an attempt to negotiate a new world order in 'one go'. ... In that it would lay down the 'rules of the international game', the framework treaty might resemble an international Treaty of Rome, although inevitably much less detailed. ... In addition to laying the legal basis for the creation of a new world order, the framework treaty, which could be negotiated within the U.N. system,..." -114

"The Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States already lays down the fundamental principles which should govern international economic relations. The transformation, over time, of the Charter into the proposed framework treaty would greatly facilitate the establishment of a new international order. If this is to be done, some more specific provisions, omitted from the Charter, should be considered for inclusion in the framework treaty. Such provisions could include:

- (a) All States shall facilitate access to technology and scientific information;
- (b) All States have the obligation to expand and liberalize international trade;
- (c) Ocean space and the atmosphere beyond precise limits of national jurisdiction are the common heritage of all mankind: as such they shall be administered exclusively for peaceful purposes through international mechanisms with the participation of all States and their resources shall be exploited with particular regard to the interest of poor countries;
- (d) Developed countries have the duty to ensure that net flows of real resources to poor countries shall not be less than the targets established by the U.N. General Assembly;...
- (g) All States shall accept an international currency to be created by an international authority;
- (h) All States shall accept the evolution of a world organization with the necessary power to plan, to make decisions and to enforce them." - 117

"[Expansion of] the Charter of Economic Rights and Duties of States... **should not be envisaged until major elements of the new order have been adopted by international agreement.**" - 123

Regional Unions in the New Order

"Regional Integration... should be encouraged as a way:... (iii) to exploit more fully the opportunities for closer integration - up to monetary, economic and political union - that will be possible, for a long time to come, only between countries whose close interdependence on one another can generate political support for, and acceptance of, the partial mergers of 'national sovereignty' indispensable for such beneficial integration of their policies and institutions." - 208

"Regional integration and harmonization can help to the extent that it widens markets and avoids wasteful competition for capital; that the manufacturing industries correspond to regionally planned priorities and are effectively controlled by the countries entering into the integration process." - 238

Global Solidarity in the New Order

"These changes call for massive innovations in and the redirection of systems of formal and informal education. A new world can only be built through solidarity of the world's people and the participation of large masses of people - hundreds of millions, not hundreds of thousands. The development of global awareness is a prerequisite to the peaceful creation of a new world order. It can even be said that the cultural and educational upgrading which global awareness implies, entails - or is equal to - the new order." - 77

"they [International Institutions] must be integrated into an all embracing approach aimed at facing the global challenge of the world of today. This approach should be guided by three fundamental objectives, i.e. greater democracy, greater efficiency and greater solidarity." - 43

"Since the rules of the game will have to be changed to create a new international order, a popularly-based desire for *solidarity with developing countries* must be established in the developed countries..." - 259

"Solidarity must also permeate society as a whole and engender the feeling of common interest and brotherhood... Without it, it will be impossible to mobilize the capacity for imagination and to achieve the real will required to share society's resources." - 62

"... **environmental awareness** means in reality the introduction of the long term, of the diachronic **solidarity** with future generations. To the extent to which the protection of the environment may entail costs, these should be looked at as an investment in the future, offset as always by a sacrifice in current consumption and in most cases justified on economic grounds by the reduced cost of preventive actions compared to the costs of remedial ones." - 162

"It is in the sphere of human environment that the interdependencies between nations are perhaps most clearly evident." - 32

East-West Dialectic

"As for joint industrial ventures, recent data show that the contracts signed with Western enterprises greatly outnumber the arrangements between the Eastern European partners themselves. According to a Soviet publication, thirty projects involving multilateral agreements have been concluded since 1971 among CMEA countries, whereas in 1974 and 1975 the Soviet Union alone signed an almost equal number of contracts of cooperation with large enterprises from West Germany, France, Italy, Austria, Finland, Japan and the United States, some of them running into billions of dollars... Over-all trade compulsions and competition in world markets in the present international system have grown to the point of making interdependence *the law of the world*. It is a factor so strong that it overpowers even ideological differences: joint ventures between centrally planned nations and large capitalist enterprises are emerging every day." - 80

The Standing Army of the New Order

"Ensuring World Security:... The planned and phased reduction in world defence spending, the reinforcement of the U.N. Peace Force together with a World Disarmament Agency..." - 122

"Very few countries have so far pledged their support of and contribution to a standing UN Peace Force. Every effort should be made to promote progress in establishing such a force as a means for peace keeping..." - 304

"Even 'sky spies', if operated by a world agency rather than a nation-state, have a clear potential for international peace-keeping." - 42

Rights and Freedom in the New Order

"The fundamental aim formulated above has its roots in the conviction that all human beings have an equal right to a life of dignity and to satisfaction in their **threefold capacities as citizen, producer and consumer.**" - 61

"Freedom: History has shown that an increase in the freedom of one individual or of a nation can result in the reduction of another's freedom in the same and different realm. Freedom must thus be viewed as the maximum compatible with that of others." - 61

"As a counterpart to these rights, a number of duties must be accepted, especially **the duty to use one's capacities in the interest of an adequate level of production...**" - 63

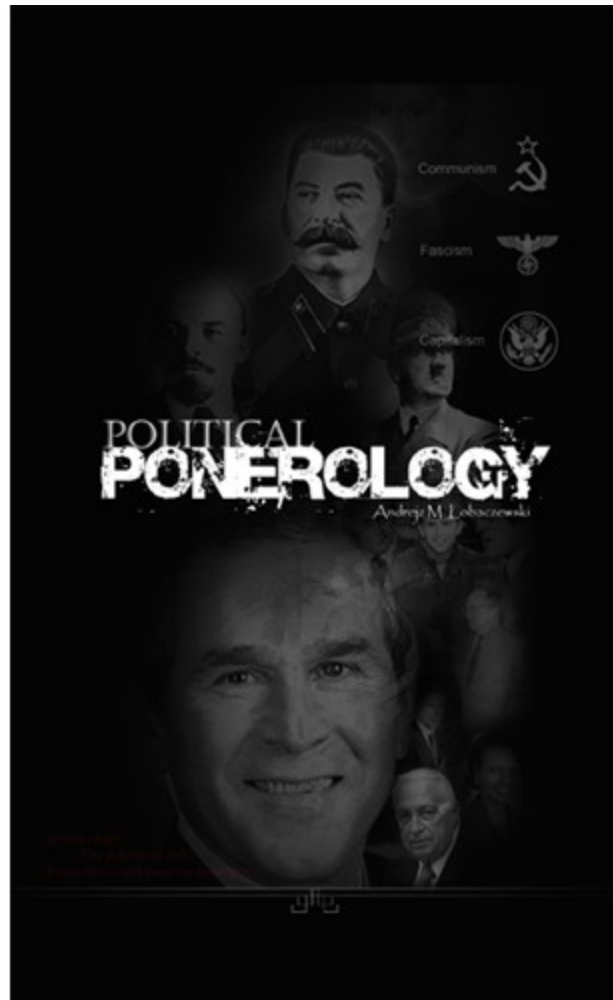
[1] Quotes from Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3



Psychopathic Groups and Distorted Definitions

By: Brent Jessop - 18 June, 2008

<http://www.knowledgedrivenrevolution.com/>



*Political Ponerology: A Science on the Nature
of Evil Adjusted for Political Purposes*
Andrew M. Lobaczewski

Trademark of the Psychopath

The use of an inner, or esoteric, language to intentionally deceive is a trademark characteristic of the psychopathic personality or a psychopathically dominated group. This is nicely summarized in Andrew M. Lobaczewski's *Political Ponerology: A Science on the Nature of Evil Adjusted for Political Purposes* (1998) [1]:

“An ideology of a secondarily ponerogenic association [secondary stage of infiltration by psychopathic individuals] is formed by gradual adaptation of the primary ideology to functions and goals other than the original formative ones. A certain kind of layering or schizophrenia of ideology takes place during the ponerization process. The outer layer closest to the original content is used for the group's propaganda purposes, especially regarding the outside world, although it can in part also be used inside with regard to disbelieving lower-echelon members. **The second layer presents the elite with no problems of comprehension: it is more hermetic, generally composed by slipping a**

different meaning into the same names. Since identical names signify different contents depending on the layer in question, understanding this “doubletalk” requires simultaneous fluency in both languages.

Average people succumb to the first layer’s suggestive insinuations for a long time before they learn to understand the second one as well. Anyone with certain psychological deviations, especially if he is wearing the mask of normality with which we are familiar [a psychopath], immediately perceives the second layer to be attractive and significant; after all, it was built by people like him. **Comprehending this doubletalk is therefore a vexatious task, provoking quite understandable psychological resistance; this very duality of language, however, is a pathognomonic [specific characteristics of a disease] symptom indicating that the human union in question is touched by the ponerogenic process to an advanced degree.”** - 116

Let us take a look at a group that continually redefines words in an attempt to deceive, namely The Club of Rome.

The Club of Rome is a premiere think tank composed of approximately 100 members including leading scientists, philosophers, political advisors, former politicians and many other influential bureaucrats and technocrats. The organization and its members have been heavily involved in the environmental movement, including such individuals as Maurice Strong, Aurelio Peccei, Daisaku Ikeda and Mikhail Gorbachev to name but a few.

[From all quotes below, *italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by myself.]

Self-Reliance versus Collective Self-Reliance

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to The Club of Rome* (1976) [2]:

“Self-reliant development, with its reliance on local rather than imported institutions and technologies, is a means whereby a nation can reduce its vulnerability to decisions and events which fall outside its control: a self-reliant community will be more resilient in times of crisis. And since it is a style of development predicated upon a recognition of cultural diversity, it is an instrument against the excessive homogenization of cultures.” - 66

The above quote may sound like a normal definition of a self-reliant country. But this is an odd statement coming from a group which is constantly pushing the idea of **interdependence**. We need to look at their inner definition of self-reliance, that is collective self-reliance.

“Self-reliance cannot mean ‘self-seclusion’, isolationism or autarky. No nation, given the nature of global interdependence, can exclude itself from the international system. The world has become too complex for that.” - 68

“Self-reliance applies at different levels: local, national and international [...] **[internationally], it becomes collective self-reliance.**” - 68

Territorial Sovereignty versus Functional Sovereignty

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

“Given the growing list of problems confronting mankind, every effort must be made to stimulate processes which point in directions which can be deemed desirable. This would certainly apply, for example, to the tendency towards the increasing centralization of decision-making involving issues beyond national frontiers should be viewed as a logical continuation of the process of change and a precondition for the effective assertion of national sovereignty.” - 103

The “increasing centralization of [international] decision-making” being a “precondition for the effective assertion of national sovereignty” may seem contradictory. To rectify this misconception, we again need to look to the inner meaning of the word sovereignty. The Club of Rome redefines it from the commonly implied “territorial sovereignty” to what they call “functional sovereignty”.

“Acceptance of these elements calls for a reinterpretation of the concept of national sovereignty. Participation and social control suggest a *functional* rather than a territorial interpretation of sovereignty, or jurisdiction over determined uses rather than geographical space. Conceptually, **this interpretation will make possible the progressive internationalization and socialization of all world resources - material and non-material - based upon the ‘common heritage of mankind’ principle.** It also permits the secure accommodation of inclusive and exclusive uses of these resources, or, in other words, the interweaving of national and international jurisdiction within the same territorial space [...] Ultimately, we must aim for *decentralized sovereignty* with the network of strong international institutions which will make it possible.” - 82

The Common Heritage of Mankind

It is not always necessary to redefine old words or slogans, sometimes it is more appropriate to create new misleading ones to describe old ideas. The “common heritage of mankind” (or “functional ownership”) is a good example of this. If you are “left leaning” this concept will sound like fascism, if you are “right leaning” this concept will sound like communism. Regardless of the label you wish give it, the end result is centralized control over all resources.

From *RIO: Reshaping the International Order*:

“Effective planning and management calls for the fundamental restructuring of the United Nations so as to give it broad economic powers and a more decisive mandate for international economic decision-making [...] It is also hoped that major changes in the United Nations structure will be made over the next decade so that it is not only able to play a more forceful role in world political affairs but it is also able to become more of a World Development Authority in managing the socio-economic affairs of the international community. [...] The most effective way of articulating the planning and management functions of this organization would be through a functional confederation of international organizations, based upon existing, restructured and, in some instances, new United Nations agencies - to be linked through an integrative machinery. This system and its machinery, if it is really to reflect interdependencies between nations and solidarity between peoples, should ultimately aim at the pooling and sharing of all resources, material and non-material, including means of production, with a view to ensuring effective planning and management of the world economy and of global resource use in a way which would meet the essential objectives of equity and efficiency.” - 185

“In the long term, and assuming progress towards the creation of an equitable international economic and social order leading to a pooling of material and non-material resources, mineral resources will need to be viewed as a common heritage of mankind.” - 148

Global Governance not Global Government

From *The First Global Revolution: A Report by the Council of The Club of Rome* (1991) [3]:

“Not only have we to find better means of governance at national and international levels, but we have also to determine the characteristics of a capacity to govern. Global ‘governance,’ in our vocabulary, does not imply a global ‘government,’ but rather the institutions of cooperation, co-ordination and common action between durable sovereign states.” - 100

In Club of Rome terminology, don’t forget, “durable sovereign states” means “durable functionally sovereign states”. From the same book the term governance, as in global governance, is expanded on:

“We use the term governance to denote the command-mechanism of a social system and its actions, which endeavors to provide security, prosperity, wherence, order and continuity to the system. It necessarily embraces ideology of the system, which may (democratic) or may not (authoritarian) define means for effective consideration of the public will and accountability of those in authority. It also includes the structure of government of the system, its policies and procedures.” - 160

Unity Through Diversity

The following quote is from a book containing a series of lectures organized at the behest of Maurice Strong (an Executive Member of the Club of Rome) while he was Secretary-General of the United Nations Conference on the Human Environment (1972). One of the lecturers was Aurelio Peccei, co-founder of The Club of Rome. The book was entitled *Who Speaks for Earth?: Seven Citizens of the World on Major Issues of the Global Environment* (1973) [4].

“As the various nations and regions continue to differentiate - in economic activities and in life styles - they must elaborate new ways of relating to each other so as to become progressively integrated into organic wholes. Differentiation must always be followed by integration. To symbolize the need of achieving **unity through diversity**, the United Nations might eventually come to be known as the Integrated Nations.

In practice, a global approach is needed when dealing with the problems of the spaceship earth which affect all of mankind. But local solutions, inevitably conditioned by local interests, are required for the problems peculiar to each human settlement.

These two contrasting attitudes concerning the environment are not incompatible : in fact they complement each other. The national loyalty that we must develop toward the planet as a whole need not interfere with the emotional attachment to our prized diversity. As we enter the global phase of social evolution, it becomes obvious that each one of us has two countries - his own and the planet earth. We cannot feel at home on earth if we do not continue to love and cultivate our own garden. And conversely, we can hardly feel comfortable in our garden if we do not care for the planet earth as our collective home.” - 42

“Unity through diversity” (or “act locally think globally” as a variation on the same slogan) is a very fluffy way of saying interdependence. The Club of Rome refers to interdependence as an organic society. From *Mankind at the Turning Point: The Second Report to The Club of Rome* (1974) [5]:

“The concept of the “organic growth” of mankind, as we have proposed in this report, is intended as a contribution toward achieving that end. **Were mankind to embark on a path of organic growth, the world would emerge as a system of interdependent and harmonious parts**, each making its own unique contributions, be it in economics, resources, or culture.

[...] Such an approach must start from and preserve the world’s regional diversity. Paths of development, region-specific rather than based on narrow national interests, must be designed to lead to a sustainable balance between the interdependent world-regions and to global harmony - that is, to mankind’s growth as an “organic entity” from its present barely embryonic state.” - viii

According to Bertrand Russell, a well bred elitist himself, an organic society is nothing more than totalitarianism. From *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952) [6]:

“Totalitarianism has a theory as well as a practice. As a practice, it means that a certain group, having by one means or another seized the apparatus of power, especially armaments and police, proceed to exploit their advantageous position to the utmost, by regulating everything in the way that gives them the maximum of control over others. But as a theory it is something different: it is the doctrine that the State, or the nation, or the community is capable of a good different from that of individual and not consisting of anything that individuals think or feel. This doctrine was especially advocated by Hegel, who glorified the State, and thought that a community should be as organic as possible. In an organic community, he thought, excellence would reside in the whole. An individual is an organism, and we do not think that his separate parts have separate goods: if he has a pain in his great toe it is he that suffers, not specially the great toe. So, in an organic society, good and evil will belong to the whole rather than the parts. This is the theoretical form of totalitarianism.” - 64

Conclusion

The use, or more appropriately, the abuse of words is a characteristic of a psychopath or psychopathic group. As you have just seen, The Club of Rome is a well versed organization in this type of deceit and should be properly classified as such. It is very important for anyone trying to understand how these types of organizations operate, to take the time to understand the inner, or esoteric language developed for the elite within the organization. Without this understanding, the outer layer of propaganda's suggestive insinuations will be dangerously misleading.

References

- [1] Andrew M. Lobaczewski, *Political Ponerology: A Science on the Nature of Evil Adjusted for Political Purposes* (1998, 2006). ISBN-10: 1-897244-25-8.
- [2] Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3. For more information about this book please read [this series of articles](#).
- [3] Alexander King and Bertrand Schneider, *The First Global Revolution: A Report by the Council of The Club of Rome: A Strategy for Surviving the World* (1991). ISBN 0-671-71107-5.
- [4] Barbara Ward, Rene Dubos, Thor Heyerdahl, Gunnar Myrdal, Carmen Miro, Lord Zuckerman and Aurelio Peccei, *Who Speaks for Earth?: Seven Citizens of the World on Major Issues of the Global Environment* (1973). ISBN 0-393-06392-5.
- [5] Mihajlo Mesarovic and Eduard Pestel, *Mankind at the Turning Point: The Second Report to The Club of Rome* (1974). ISBN 0-525-03945-7. For more information about this book please read [this series of articles](#)

[6] Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN 0-415-10906-X .
For more information about this book please read [this series of articles](#)

More articles by Brent Jessop can be found at his site [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

KNOWLEDGE DRIVEN REVOLUTION

How to Control the AMERICAN Population by Paul Ehrlich

The Population Bomb Part 1

*Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)
December 10, 2007*



Dr. Paul R. Ehrlich

In 1968, Dr. Paul R. Ehrlich wrote a well publicized book entitled *The Population Bomb**. Ehrlich predicted widespread famine and disaster unless population growth was reduced to zero in America and throughout the world by compulsory methods if necessary.

Ehrlich is a Professor of Biology at Stanford University specializing in population biology. He has written many books and scientific papers related to overpopulation and has been well rewarded for his efforts.

"Professor Ehrlich is a fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, and the American Philosophical Society, and a member of the National Academy of Sciences. Professor Ehrlich has received several honorary degrees, the John Muir Award of the Sierra Club, the Gold Medal Award of the World Wildlife Fund International, a MacArthur Prize Fellowship, the Crafoord Prize of the Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences (given in lieu of a Nobel Prize in areas where the Nobel is not given), in 1993 the Volvo Environmental Prize, in 1994 the United Nations' Sasakawa Environment Prize, in 1995 the Heinz Award for the Environment, in 1998 the Tyler Prize for Environmental Achievement and the Dr. A. H. Heineken Prize for Environmental Sciences, in 1999 the Blue Planet Prize, in 2001 the Eminent Ecologist Award of the Ecological Society of America and the Distinguished Scientist Award of the American Institute of Biological Sciences." - [Stanford University Bio](#)

What is Population Control?

Ehrlich's definition of population control is very telling toward the broader belief system that he holds. As will become clear throughout this article, he believes that the dictates of an all powerful government, supposedly for the benefit of the whole society should trump any and all rights of the individual or family.

From *The Population Bomb*:

"Population control is the conscious regulation of the number of human beings to meet the needs not just of individual families, but of **society as a whole**." [emphasis mine] - XI

"...family planning...By stressing the right of parents to have a number of children they want, it evades the basic question of population policy, which is how **to give societies the number of children they need**... people would still be multiplying like rabbits." [emphasis mine] - 79

How to Fix the Population Explosion?

"We must have population control at home, hopefully through changes in our value system, but by compulsion if voluntary methods fail." - XI

According to Ehrlich the first step to worldwide population control is the control of the American population because:

"We want our propaganda based on "do as we do" - not "do as we say." " - 130

A truly commendable ethical stand indeed.

"So the first task is population control at home. How do we go about it? Many of my colleagues feel that some sort of compulsory birth regulation would be necessary to achieve such control. One plan often mentioned involved the addition of temporary sterilants to water supplies or staple food. Doses of the antidote would be carefully rationed by the government to produce the desired population size." 130

For completeness I will include, below, Ehrlich's description as to why such a population control method would not work. Please note that his reasoning is purely technical, with no ethical or moral objection to this method. Continuing:

"Those of you appalled at such a suggestion can rest easy. The option isn't even open to us, since no such substance exists. If the choice now is either such additive or catastrophe, we shall have catastrophe. It might be possible to develop such population control tools, although the task would not be simple. Either the additive would have to operate equally well and with minimum side effects against both sexes, or some way would have to be found to direct it only to one sex and shield the other. Feeding potent male hormones to the whole population might sterilize and defeminize the women, while the upset in the male population and society as a whole can be well imagined. In addition, care would have to be taken to see to it that the sterilizing substance did not reach livestock, either through water or garbage.

Technical problems aside, I suspect you'll agree with me that society would probably dissolve before sterilants were added to the water supply by the government. Just consider the fluoridation controversy! Some other way will have to be found." - 130

Some More Subtle Methods

Financial coercion is also an effective method to reduce the population. Ehrlich recommends changes to the income tax laws to encourage small families. But his creativity goes beyond just simple income tax.

"On top of the income tax change, luxury taxes could be placed on layettes, cribs, diapers, diaper services, expensive toys, always with the proviso that the essentials be available without penalty to the poor. There would, of course, have to be considerable experimenting on the level of financial pressure necessary to achieve the population goals. To the penalties could be added some incentives. A governmental "first marriage

grant" could be awarded each couple in which the age of both partners was 25 or more. "Responsibility prizes" could be given to each couple for each five years of childless marriage, or to each man who accepted irreversible sterilization (vasectomy) before having more than two children. Or special lotteries might be held - tickets going only to the childless. Adoption could be subsidized and made a simple procedure. Considering the savings in school buildings, pollution control, unemployment compensation, and the like, these grants would be a money-making proposition. But even if they weren't, the price would be a small one to pay for saving our nation." - 132

"In short, the plush life would be difficult to attain for those with large families - which is as it should be, since they are getting their pleasure from their children, who are being supported in part by more responsible members of society." - 131

Abortion

Ehrlich makes his views on the use of abortion to help control the population crystal clear.

"[Japan's] dramatic halving of the birth rate was achieved originally through the sanctioning of abortion. Abortion is highly effective weapon in the armory of population control. It is condemned by many family planning groups, which are notorious for pussyfooting about methodology, despite beginning 60 years ago as revolutionary social pioneers." - 84

"One of the more encouraging signs of progress has been the change in abortion laws [in the US]." - 89

"Biologists must promote understanding of the facts of reproductive biology which relate to matters of abortion and contraception. They must do more than simply reiterate the facts of population dynamics. They must point out the biological absurdity of equating a zygote (the cell created by joining of sperm and egg) or fetus (unborn child) with a human being. As Professor Garrett Hardin of the University of California pointed out, that is like confusing a set of blueprints with a building. People are people because of the interaction of genetic information (stored in a chemical language) with an environment. Clearly, the most "humanizing" element of that environment is the cultural element to which the child is not exposed until after birth. When conception is prevented or a fetus destroyed, the **potential** for another human being is lost, but that is all. That potential is lost **regardless** of the reason that conception does not occur - there is no biological difference if the egg is not fertilized because of timing or because of mechanical or other interference.

Biologists must point out that contraception is for many reasons more desirable than abortion. But they must also point out that in many cases abortion is more desirable than childbirth. Above all, biologists must take the side of the hungry billions of **living** human beings today and tomorrow, not the side of **potential** human beings. Remember, unless, their numbers are limited, if those potential human beings are born, they will at best lead

miserable lives and die young. We can not permit the destruction of humanity to be abetted by a doctrine conceived in total ignorance of the biological facts of life.
[emphasis in original] - 138

Conclusion

The [next article](#) in this series will examine Ehrlich's desires for the rest of the planet, especially the third world. It will also look at the issue of "optimum" world population size and who should get to decide what that optimum level will be. The third part in this series will discuss the need for [altering religion, sex education and the role of women in society](#). Part four will examine in some detail the different [organizations, foundations and individuals](#) involved in population control. Finally, I will compare the arguments for ["population explosion" with that of "global warming"](#) by directly comparing *The Population Bomb* (1968) to Al Gore's *An Inconvenient Truth* (2006).

*Quotes from: Paul R. Ehrlich. *The Population Bomb: Revised & Expanded Edition* (1968, 1971). SBN 345-24489-3-150.

How to Control the WORLD Population

by Paul Ehrlich

The Population Bomb Part 2

*Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)
December 17, 2007*



Once the American population size is comfortably under control, be it by voluntary or compulsory methods, the rest of the world needs to be "helped." Paul Ehrlich's 1968 *The Population Bomb** described a variety of methods for controlling third world population growth and who should be involved in deciding the optimum population levels for the world.

Please read [this article](#) for a discussion on Ehrlich's desire for the American population including "addition of temporary sterilants to water supplies or staple food" with an antidote "carefully rationed by the government."

Plan for the Third World

Once the American population is comfortably under control, be it voluntary or compulsory methods, the "do as we do" propaganda can begin on the rest of the world. From *The Population Bomb*:

"What about vasectomies? A few years ago, there was talk in India of compulsory sterilization for all males who were fathers of three or more children. Ignore for a moment the socio-political problems that would be raised by such a program. Consider just the logistic problems, as A. S. Parkes did. Even if those eligible could be rounded up, it would take 1,000 surgeons or para-surgeons operating eight hours a day, five days a week, a full eight years to sterilize the candidates who exist today. And the stock of candidates is growing very rapidly. Can you picture the probable results of a government attempt to sterilize 40 million American males? What a problem it would be in our country, with its relatively informed populace and efficient transport and communication system! Imagine such an attempt in India, where the difference between castration and sterilization (still not clear to many Westerners) would be almost impossible to explain. As one might expect, the principal Indian official thinking in such tough-minded terms, Dr. S. Chandrasekhar, ended up in a less influential position in a government shuffle." - 82

"When we suggested sterilizing all Indian males with three or more children, he should have encouraged the Indian government to go ahead with the plan. We should have volunteered logistical support in the form of helicopters, vehicles, and surgical instruments. We should have sent doctors to aid in the program by setting up centers for training para-medical personnel to do vasectomies. Coercion? Perhaps, but coercion in a good cause." - 151

"United States, Russia, Great Britain, Canada, Japan, Australia, Europe, and other ODCs [overdeveloped countries] immediately set up, through the United Nations, a machinery for "area rehabilitation." This plan involved simultaneous population control, agricultural development, and, where resources warrant it, industrialization of selected countries or sections of countries. The bedrock requirement of the program would have to be population control, necessarily including migration control to prevent swamping of aided areas by the less fortunate." - 148

"If we could, somehow, get a program underway in which the ODCs made a genuine attempt to aid the UDCs [underdeveloped countries], what form might that program take? The specific requirements of the program would vary from area to area. Possibly the first step in all areas would be to set up relay stations and distribute small transistorized TV sets to villages for communal viewing of satellite-transmitted programs... TV programs would explain the rehabilitation plan for each area. These programs would have to be produced with the combined skills of people with great expertise in the subject to be presented and intimate knowledge of the target population. The programs could be presented both "straight" and as "entertainment." ... The programs would use the prospect of increased affluence as a major incentive for gaining cooperation. It seems unlikely that the threat of future starvation would have much impact. If necessary, however, the TV channel could be used to make it clear that the continuance of food supplies depends on the cooperation of the people in the area..." - 149

How Many People Get to Live?

"In all areas studies should be initiated to determine how much agricultural and industrial development is feasible. It must be determined how many people, at each stage of development can live reasonably comfortable, secure lives in each area. That is, demographic goals must be set that are reasonable in the light of each country's and the world's resources." - 150

"But with a human population of, say, one-half billion people, some minor changes in technology and some major changes in the rate of use and equity of distribution of the world's resources, there would clearly be no environmental crisis." - 44

"But at a minimum it seems safe to say that a population of one billion people could be sustained in reasonable comfort for perhaps 1000 years if resources were husbanded carefully." - 157

Who Decides How Many People Get to Live?

It should come as little surprise that the individual has little or no say in this. Ehrlich's ideas for America:

"Obviously, such measures should be coordinated by a powerful governmental agency. A federal Bureau of Population and Environment [BPE] should be set up to determine the optimum population size for the US and devise measures to establish it. Of course this should be done within the context of resource and environmental limitations. The BPE should coordinate population policies with those dealing with environmental protection and resource husbandry. This Bureau should give ample funds to support research in the areas of population control and environmental quality. In the first area it would promote intensive investigation and development of new techniques of birth control. This research will not only give us better methods to use at home, which will be essential for helping the UDCs [underdeveloped countries] to control their populations: the BPE also would encourage more research on human sex determination, for if a simple method could be found to guarantee that firstborn children were males, then population control problems in many areas would be somewhat eased. In our country and elsewhere, couples with only female children "keep trying" in hope of a son.

Two other functions of the BPE would be to aid Congress in developing legislation relating to population and environment, and to inform the public of the need for such legislation. Some of these needs are already apparent. The right of **any** woman to have an abortion if it is approved by a physician should be guaranteed. We need federal legislation affirming the right to voluntary sterilization for adults... We need a federal law requiring sex education in schools - sex education that includes discussion of the need for regulating the birth rate and of the techniques of birth control. Such education should begin at the earliest age recommended by those with professional competence in this area - certainly before junior high school. [emphasis in original] - 132

Ehrlich envisions that these and other world population policies be coordinated from the international level through the United Nations or some other world body.

"A general answer to the question, "What needs to be done?" can be given easily. We must rapidly bring the world population under control, reducing the growth rate to zero and eventually making it go negative. Conscious regulation of human numbers must be [sic] achieved. Simultaneously we must greatly increase our food production. This agricultural program should be carefully monitored to minimize deleterious effects on the environment and should include an effective program of ecosystem restoration. The world's supply of nonrenewable resources must be assessed and plans made for the most economical and beneficial management and use of what remains of them. As these projects are carried out, an international policy research program must be initiated **to set optimum population-environment goals for the world** and to devise methods for reaching these goals." [emphasis mine] - 127

Conclusion

The next article in this series will examine the [role of religion, women and sex education in population control](#) and the changes that Ehrlich believes necessary. Part four of this series will discuss the major [organizations, foundations and individuals](#) involved. Finally, the last article will examine the similarities between the arguments for [global warming and the population explosion](#), including a direct comparison between *The Population Bomb* and Al Gore's *An Inconvenient Truth*.

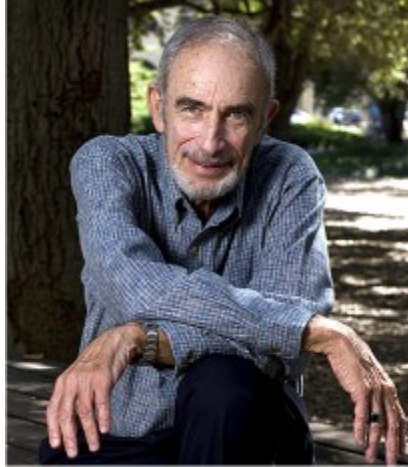
*Quotes from: Paul R. Ehrlich. *The Population Bomb: Revised & Expanded Edition* (1968, 1971). SBN 345-24489-3-150.

Population, Religion and Sex Education

The Population Bomb Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)
December 24, 2007

"We must have population control at home, hopefully through changes in our value system, but by compulsion if voluntary methods fail." - Paul Ehrlich, 1968 (pXI)



Dr Paul Ehrlich

The previous two articles in this series described some of the compulsory techniques for controlling population growth in [America](#) and the [third world](#) proposed by Paul Ehrlich in his 1968 book, *The Population Bomb**. What about changing our value system into something more compatible with Ehrlich's mindset? How do you change a societies value system?

Sex Education and the Role of Women

When trying to institute a change in society, especially a long-term change, the most important and easily manipulated group are children. And there is no better tool than the education system for indoctrination of children.

From *The Population Bomb*:

"One of the most important roles of sex education must be to impress on everyone that death control in the absence of birth control is self-defeating, to say the least." - 87

"We need a federal law requiring sex education in schools - sex education that includes discussion of the need for regulating the birth rate and of the techniques of birth control. Such education should begin at the earliest age recommended by those with professional competence in this area - certainly before junior high school.

By "sex education" I do not mean course focusing on hygiene or presenting a simple-minded "birds and bees" approach to human sexuality. The reproductive function of sex must be shown as just one of its functions, and one that must be carefully regulated in relation to the needs of the individual and society. Much emphasis must be placed on sex as an interpersonal relationship, as an important and extremely pleasurable aspect of being human, as mankind's major and most enduring recreation, as a fountainhead of humor, as a phenomenon that affects every aspect of human life... In short, sex as we know it, is a peculiarly human activity. It has many complex functions other than the

production of offspring. It is now imperative that we restrict the reproductive function of sex while producing a minimum of disruption in the others." - 133

Another obvious group of society that needs to have their values changed, if the population is to be reduced, are women.

"With a rational atmosphere mankind should be able to work out the problems of deemphasizing the reproductive role of sex. These problems include finding substitutes for the satisfaction and rewards that women derive from childbearing and for the ego satisfaction that often accompanies excessive fatherhood. Implicit attitudes and social pressures within our society toward parenthood, especially motherhood, add up to an even more powerful prenatal policy than our legal system represents. Equal opportunities and salaries for women in business and the professions, which are now being sought by the women's liberation movement, would strongly encourage them to seek other outlets for their energy and talents besides motherhood. Society would greatly benefit both from the resulting lowered fertility and the productive contributions of women.

All too often today marriage either provides a "license" for sexual activity or a way of legitimizing the unplanned results of premarital sexual activity. But greater equality between the sexes, reliable contraceptives, and changing attitudes among today's young people are solving the former problem; the greater availability of contraceptives and abortion could solve the latter." - 134

Religion

What about American religious values? Are they in need of change too?

"Somehow we've got to change from a growth-oriented, exploitative system to one focused on stability and conservation. Our entire system of orienting to nature must undergo a revolution. And that revolution is going to be extremely difficult to pull off, since the attitudes of Western culture toward nature are deeply rooted in Judeo-Christian tradition. Unlike people in many other cultures, we see man's basic role as that of dominating nature, rather than as living in harmony with it. This entire problem has been elegantly discussed by Professor Lynn White, Jr., in Science magazine. He points out, for instance, that before the Christian era trees, springs, hills, streams, and other objects of nature had guardian spirits. These spirits had to be approached and placated before one could safely invade their territory. As White says, "By destroying pagan animism, Christianity made it possible to exploit nature in a mood of indifference to the feelings of natural objects... Both our present science and our present technology are so tainted with orthodox Christian arrogance toward nature that no solution for our ecological crisis can be expected from them alone. **Since the roots of our trouble are so largely religious, the remedy must also be essentially religious, whether we call it that or not.**" " [emphasis mine] - 155

Spreading the Message of the New Religion: Population Missionaries

Ehrlich finishes his book with a very descriptive answer to the question: How can people spread the new faith?

"The question I am most frequently asked after giving talks about the population explosion is, "What can I do to help?" The obvious first answer is, "Set an example - don't have more than two children." " -159

"First of all, get together with people who share your concerns. It's easier, pleasanter and generally more effective to **crusade** in a group." [emphasis mine] - 160

The major thrust of this section is to write letters to politician and others.

"Above all, if you really want to survive, start writing!" - 164

"Editors of magazines and newspapers are excellent targets for letters. Complain bitterly about any positive treatment of large families. Attack the publicizing of "mothers of the year" unless they have no more than two children or have adopted the extra ones. Request that the publications you address stop carrying any advertising **implying by statement or inference that it is socially acceptable to have more than two children**. Point out that any promotion of the idea that a growing population means prosperity is making a contribution to the destruction of America. Television and radio stations should be subjected to similar constant pressure. Series featuring large families should be assailed. More programming about the population crisis should be demanded. Ask for prime time programs on sex education and the use of contraceptives. Raise a fuss whenever **programming or commercials promote reproductive irresponsibility**." [emphasis mine] - 163

"Another target for your letters is the business community... "Dear Sir: Your company's advertisement was shown in the middle of *The Saturday Family*, implying your sponsorship of that program. The day is upon us when **we can no longer tolerate television programs that feature large families as if they still represented acceptable behaviour on the part of parents**." [emphasis mine] - 164

A fair bit of attention was devoted to children, as should be expected with Ehrlich's focus on sex education.

"Give your child an IUD [intrauterine device] to take to "show and tell." " - 166

He also encourages people to "proselytize friends and associates" by giving specific arguments tailor made for different types of people. Under the heading "Target is a Schoolteacher," he suggests that it is:

"easy for you to convince most schoolteachers that the population problem is very real. They have been struggling with overcrowded classrooms and ghetto children for a long time." - 176

Because of the limits placed on individual teachers by school boards:

"Subtle propaganda to the kiddies and letter writing may be all you can ask for [from a teacher]." - 177

Conclusion

The next part in this series will examine the [major organizations, foundations and individuals](#) working toward population control. The final article will compare the current arguments for [global warming with the arguments for population control](#), including a direct comparison between *The Population Bomb* (1968) and Al Gore's *An Inconvenient Truth* (2006).

*Quotes from: Paul R. Ehrlich. *The Population Bomb: Revised & Expanded Edition* (1968, 1971). SBN 345-24489-3-150.

Those Involved in Population Control

The Population Bomb Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)
December 31, 2007

"In the eight years that I have been a part-time propagandist, I have found that many people in influential positions share my concern. I have had encouraging letters from all over the world. People in radio and television have been extremely helpful in providing exposure for the issues." - Paul Ehrlich, 1968 (p159)

Paul Ehrlich's book *The Population Bomb** describes a variety of different ways to reduce the population of the world. This includes, among other things; [financial incentives](#), [manipulative sex education](#), [forced vasectomies](#) for every man with more than three children, and [adding sterilants](#) to the water supply or food staples.

But Ehrlich is only one man, albeit a well connected Stanford University professor, but still just an individual. Who else is involved in these types of population control schemes?

United States Government

"In late 1970. Congress finally placed the Family Planning Services and Population Research Act to provide free contraception to the poor through non-profit agencies. It also established an Office of Population Affairs in the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare to sponsor further research on birth control." - 85



"Beginning with Senators Ernest Gruening and Joseph Clark in the middle 1960s, there has been a small group of dedicated people in Congress who have been trying to get the government to move on these matters. More recently, the ball has been carried by Senators Joseph Tydings and Robert Packwood, and Representatives Paul McCloskey, **George Bush**, and James Scheuer." [emphasis mine] - 86

"Despite repeated statements of concern since 1965 by President's Johnson and Nixon..."
- 85

United Nations and Co.

"The United Nations has greatly increased its family planning activities, operation through several agencies including WHO [World Health Organization], UNICEF, and UNESCO [United Nations Education, Scientific, and Cultural Organization]. Secretary General U Thant has been urged by a study group to establish a special "world population institute" promptly to take practical action against population growth. Robert McNamara, president of the World Bank, has put population projects high on the Bank's list of

priorities. The Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) is also getting into the field." - 84

Foundations

"In March 1970, a two-year Commission on Population Growth and the American Future was established under the chairmanship of John D. Rockefeller, III."

"Aside from government contributions, private foundations such as Ford and Rockefeller are becoming more involved in programs, both for research and overseas family planning projects." - 86

Zero Population Growth

"But a new organization exists - Zero Population Growth - whose mission is to educate the public and politicians to the necessity for stopping population growth as soon as possible, to lobby for legislation, and to work for politicians who support the same goals. ZPG now has more than 30,000 members and is growing fast. Hopefully it will have developed some real political clout by 1972." - 88

Ehrlich forgets to mention in his book that he [founded](#) Zero Population Growth with Richard Bowers and Charles Remington. This organization is still going strong under a new name: [Population Connection](#).

Scientists

Ehrlich, a self proclaimed propagandist, also believes that his fellow scientists, namely biologists, should be much more involved in the "education" of the masses.

"Biologists must promote understanding of the facts of reproductive biology which relate to matters of abortion and contraception. They must do more than simply reiterate the facts of population dynamics. They must point out the biological absurdity of equating a zygote (the cell created by joining of sperm and egg) or fetus (unborn child) with a human being... People are people because of the interaction of genetic information (stored in a chemical language) with an environment. Clearly, the most "humanizing" element of that environment is the cultural element to which the child is not exposed until after birth... in many cases abortion is more desirable than childbirth." - 138

Environmental Groups

The interconnectedness of the environmental movement and the population control fanatics is undeniable and I will examine some of the similarities between *The Population Bomb* and Al Gore's *An Inconvenient Truth* in the [next article](#) of this series. But for now, some of the more obvious environmental connections.

The forward to the *The Population Bomb* was written by [David Brower](#), the founder of

Sierra Club Foundation, the John Muir Institute for Environmental Studies, Friends of the Earth, the League of Conservation Voters, Earth Island Institute (1982), North Cascades Conservation Council, and Fate of the Earth Conferences.

Also *The Population Bomb* was published by [Sierra Club Books](#).

Ehrlich has also been well rewarded by both the scientific and the environmental community. From his [University of Stanford profile](#):

Professor Ehrlich is a fellow of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, and the American Philosophical Society, and a member of the National Academy of Sciences. Professor Ehrlich has received several honorary degrees, the John Muir Award of the Sierra Club, the Gold Medal Award of the World Wildlife Fund International, a MacArthur Prize Fellowship, the Crafoord Prize of the Royal Swedish Academy of Sciences (given in lieu of a Nobel Prize in areas where the Nobel is not given), in 1993 the Volvo Environmental Prize, in 1994 the United Nations' Sasakawa Environment Prize, in 1995 the Heinz Award for the Environment, in 1998 the Tyler Prize for Environmental Achievement and the Dr. A. H. Heineken Prize for Environmental Sciences, in 1999 the Blue Planet Prize, in 2001 the Eminent Ecologist Award of the Ecological Society of America and the Distinguished Scientist Award of the American Institute of Biological Sciences.

*Quotes from: Paul R. Ehrlich. *The Population Bomb: Revised & Expanded Edition* (1968, 1971). SBN 345-24489-3-150.

The Apocalypse, From Paul Ehrlich to Al Gore

The Population Bomb Part 5

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](#)

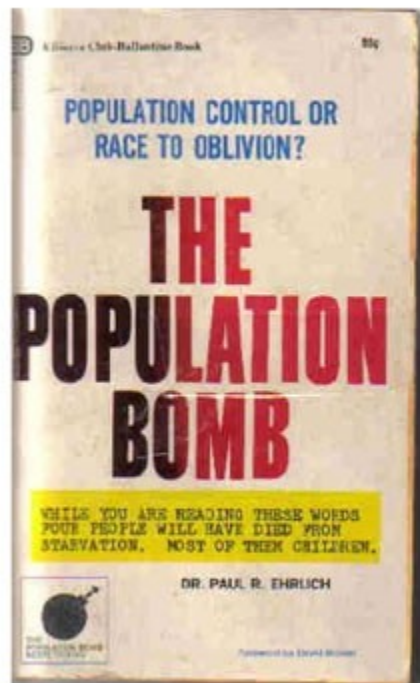
January 7, 2008

"...it would not surprise me if the sea were virtually emptied of its harvestable fishes and shellfish in a few decades or less." - Paul Ehrlich, 1968 (p96)

While reading Paul Ehrlich's *The Population Bomb** it is hard not to notice the similarities between his arguments and those used to popularize global warming. From the threat of apocalypse to the promise of utopia, from the scourge of big business to the dream of a sustainable society, and the cancer of the earth, man himself.

Previous articles in this series discussed the methods to control the size of the [American](#)

and [world](#) populations; the use of [religion, women, and sex education](#); and the [major organizations, environmental groups, foundations and individuals](#) involved.



For convenience sake, pardon the pun, I will compare Paul Ehrlich's book *The Population Bomb* (1968) with Al Gore's book *An Inconvenient Truth* (2006)** , but any global warming book would do. As a sad sign of the times, a lot of Gore's arguments are described in picture form for our dumbed down society. As a result, some of the "quotes" are more descriptive than reproductive.

Famine

[Ehrlich] "We are today involved in the events leading to famine and ecocatastrophe; tomorrow we may be destroyed by them." - XI

[Ehrlich] "If the pessimists are correct, massive famines will occur soon, possibly in the 1970s, certainly by the early 1980s. So far most of the evidence seems to be on the side of the pessimists." - 25

[Gore] "The map to the left shows what is projected to happen to soil moisture in the United States with the doubling of CO₂, which would happen in less than 50 years if we continue business as usual. According to scientists, it will lead, among other things, to a loss in soil moisture of up to 35% in vast growing areas of our country. And of course, drier soils mean drier vegetables, less productive agriculture, and more fires. Moreover, scientists are now telling us that if we do not act quickly to contain global warming pollution, we will soon barrel right through a doubling of CO₂ and move toward a

quadrupling, in which case, scientists tell us, most of the United States would lose up to 60% of its soil moisture. [Beside this paragraph is a full page image of a Texas farmer standing in a sea of dried and dying crops.]" - 121

Disease

[Ehrlich] "With people living cheek by jowl, some of mankind's old enemies, like bubonic plague and cholera, may once again be on the move. As hunger and poverty increase, the resources that nations put into the control of vectors (disease-spreading organisms) may be reduced. Malaria, yellow fever, typhus, and their friends are still around - indeed, malaria is still a major killer and disabler of man. These ancient enemies of *Homo sapiens* are just waiting for the resurgence of mosquitoes, lice, and other vectors, to ride high again... It is not inconceivable that we will, one of these days, have a visitation from a "super flu," perhaps much more virulent than the famous killer of 1918-1920." - 46

[Gore] "Algae is just one of the disease vectors that have been increasing in range because of global warming. And when these vectors - whether algae, mosquitoes, ticks, or other germ-carrying life forms - start to show up in new areas and cover a wider range, they are more likely to interact with people, and the diseases they carry become more serious threats... To cite one important example of this phenomenon, mosquitoes are profoundly affected by global warming. There are cities that were originally located just above the mosquito line, which used to mark the altitude above which mosquitoes would not venture. Nairobi, Kenya, and Harare, Zimbabwe, are two such cities. Now, with global warming, the mosquitoes are climbing to higher altitudes." - 172

[Gore] "Some 30 so-called new diseases have emerged over the last 25 to 30 years. And some old diseases that had been under control are now surging again. [included are scary black-and-white pictures (under a microscope) of Hantavirus, Machupo Virus, Arenaviridae, Coronavirus, Dengue Fever, Borrelia Burgdorferi (Lyme Disease), E. Coli, Marburg Hemorrhagic Fever, Legionnaires Disease, Influenza Virus, Nipahvirus, and Tuberculosis.]... West Nile virus" - 174

Apocalypse

[Ehrlich] "Ways must be found to bring home to all the American people the reality of the threat to their way of life - indeed, to their very lives." - 130

[Gore] "At stake is the survival of our civilization and the habitability of the Earth." - 11

Utopia

[Ehrlich] "We will have to do without two gas-gulping monster cars per family. We will have to learn to get along with some insect damage in our produce... Such may be the cost of survival. Of course, we may also have to get along with less emphysema, less cancer, less heart disease, less noise, less filth, less crowding, less need to work long

hours or "moonlight," less robbery, less assault, less murder, and less threat of war. The pace of life may slow down. We may have more fishing, more relaxing, more time to watch TV, more time to drink beer (served in bottles that **must** be returned)." [emphasis in original] - 142

[Gore] "But along with the danger we face from global warming, this crisis also brings unprecedented opportunities. What are the opportunities such a crisis also offers? They include not just new jobs and new profits, though there will be plenty of both, we can build clean engines, we can harness the Sun and the wind; we can stop wasting energy; we can use our planet's plentiful coal resources without heating the planet." - 11

[Gore] "We can do something about this! [followed by happy pictures of compact fluorescent bulbs, fuel-cell hybrid busses, solar panels, green roof, electric car powered by hydrogen fuel cell, hybrid car, geothermal power station] " - 277

[Ehrlich] "If I'm right, we will save the world. If I'm wrong, people will still be better fed, better housed, and happier, thanks to our efforts." - 179

Global Warming Overlap

Ehrlich, never one to avoid a good doomsday story, did briefly mention climate change as a potential result of over population.

From *The Population Bomb*:

"Too many cars, too many factories, too much detergent, too much pesticides, multiplying contrails, inadequate sewage treatment plants, too little water, **too much carbon dioxide** - all can be traced easily to **too many people**." [emphasis mine] - 44

"But even more important is the potential for changing the climate of the Earth. All of the junk we dump into the atmosphere, all of the dust, all of the carbon dioxide, have effects on the temperature balance of the Earth... The greenhouse effect is being enhanced now by the greatly increase level of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere. In the last one hundred years our burning of fossil fuels raised the level some 15%. The greenhouse effect today is being countered by low-level clouds generated by contrails, dust, and other contaminants that tend to keep the energy of the sun from warming the surface as much.

At the moment we cannot predict what the overall climatic results will be of our using the atmosphere as a garbage dump. We do know that very small changes in either direction in the average temperature of the Earth could be very serious. With a few degrees of cooling, a new ice age might be upon us, with rapid and drastic effects on the agricultural productivity of the temperate regions. With a few degrees of heating, the Greenland and Antarctic ice caps would melt, perhaps raising ocean levels 250 feet." - 38

However, he did not limit himself to climate change as the only way that burning fossil fuels would destroy the environment.

"We are also depleting the world's supply of oxygen by burning (oxidizing) vast quantities of fossil fuels and by clearing iron-rich tropical soils in which the iron is then oxidized." - 36

The Real Enemy Then is Humanity Itself

Once people accept either the population control or global warming hysteria they will be lead, quite intentionally, to an unmistakable conclusion: the real problem facing humanity is humanity. Both Ehrlich and Gore are eager to point this out to their readers, below are two examples from each.

[Ehrlich] "I wish I could offer you some sugarcoated solutions, but I'm afraid the time for them is long gone. A cancer is an uncontrolled multiplication of cells; the population explosion is an uncontrolled multiplication of people. Treating only the symptoms of cancer may make the victim more comfortable at first, but eventually he dies - often horribly. A similar fate awaits a world with a population explosion if only the symptoms are treated. We must shift our efforts from treatment of the symptoms to the cutting out of the cancer. The operation will demand many apparently brutal and heartless decisions. The pain may be intense. But the disease is so far advanced that only with radical surgery does the patient have a chance of survival." - 152

[Gore] "Global warming, along with the cutting and burning of forests and other critical habitats, is causing the loss of living species at a level comparable to the extinction event that wiped out the dinosaurs 65 million years ago. That event was believed to have been caused by a giant asteroid. This time it is not an asteroid colliding with the Earth and wreaking havoc: it is us." 10

[Ehrlich] "... must take a stand to protect mankind from himself." - 182

[Gore] "Each one of us is a cause of global warming..." - 278

Conclusion

The purpose behind blaming humanity itself for a perpetually emerging apocalypse is way beyond the scope of this article, but it is very intertwined with both sustainable development and world government. Some closing words to ponder.

"In searching for a new enemy to unite us [all of humanity], we came up with the idea that pollution, the threat of global warming, water shortages, famine and the like would fit the bill. In their totality and in their interactions, these phenomena constitute a common threat which as the enemy, we fall into the trap about which we have already warned, namely mistaking symptoms for causes. All these dangers are caused by human intervention and it is only through changed attitudes and behaviour that they can be overcome. The real enemy then is humanity itself." - Alexander King and Bertrand Schneider, *The First Global Revolution: A Report by the Council of The Club of Rome* (1991).

*Quotes from: Paul R. Ehrlich. *The Population Bomb: Revised & Expanded Edition* (1968, 1971). SBN 345-24489-3-150.

** Quotes from: Al Gore. *An Inconvenient Truth* (2006). ISBN-13:978-1-59486-567-1.



World Evolutionary Humanism, Eugenics and UNESCO

UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

May 19, 2008



Sir Julian Sorell Huxley

"That [fundamental] task [of UNESCO] is to help the emergence of **a single world culture**, with its own philosophy and background of ideas, and with its own broad purpose. This is opportune, since this is the first time in history that the scaffolding and the mechanisms for world unification have become available, and also the first time that man has had the means (in the shape of scientific discovery and its applications) of laying a world-wide foundation for the minimum physical welfare of the entire human species. And it is necessary, for at the moment two opposing philosophies of life confront each other from the West and from the East, and not only impede the achievement of unity but threaten to become the foci of actual conflict.

You may categorise the two philosophies as two super-nationalisms; or as individualism versus collectivism; or as the American versus the Russian way of life; or as capitalism versus communism; or as Christianity versus Marxism; or in half a dozen other ways.

The fact of their opposition remains and the further fact that round each of them are crystallising the lives and thoughts and political aspirations of hundreds of millions of human beings. Can this conflict be avoided, these opposites be reconciled, this antitheses be resolved in a higher syntheses? I believe not only that this can happen, but that, through the **inexorable dialectic of evolution**, it *must* happen - only I do not know whether it will happen before or after another war." – 61

As the first Director of UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), Sir Julian Sorell Huxley (1887-1975) wrote a paper entitled *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946) [1] in which he outlined his vision for the newly created international organisation (which grew out of the League of Nations' Institute of Intellectual Co-operation). According to Huxley, the guiding philosophy of UNESCO should be what he termed, World Evolutionary Humanism. The following article describes this philosophy and its relation to eugenics.

Julian Huxley, an evolutionary biologist, humanist, and ardent internationalist held many titles including: Secretary of the Zoological Society of London (1935-42), first president of the British Humanist Association (1963), Vice-President (1937-44) and President (1959-62) of the British Eugenics Society. He was also a founding member of the World Wild Life Fund, coined the term "transhumanism" (as a means of disguising eugenics) and gave two Galton memorial lectures (1936, 1962). Huxley also received many awards including the Darwin Medal of the Royal Society (1956), UNESCO's Kalinga Prize (1953) and the Special Award of the Lasker Foundation in the category Planned Parenthood - World Population (1959) to name but a few. He is also the Grandson of Thomas Huxley (Darwin's Bulldog) and brother of author Aldous Huxley.

UNESCO Philosophy of World Evolutionary Humanism

From *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"But in order to carry out its work, an organisation such as Unesco needs not only a set of general aims and objects for itself, but also a working philosophy, a working hypothesis concerning human existence and *its* aims and objects, which will dictate, or at least indicate, a definite line of approach to its problems." - 6

"Its [UNESCO's] main concern is with peace and security and with human welfare, in so far as they can be subserved by the educational and scientific and cultural relations of the peoples of the world. Accordingly its outlook must, it seems, be based on some form of humanism. Further, that humanism must clearly be a world humanism, both in the sense of seeking to bring in all the peoples of the world, and of treating all peoples and all individuals within each people as equals in terms of human dignity, mutual respect, and educational opportunity. It must also be a scientific humanism, in the sense that the application of science provides most of the material basis for human culture, and also that

the practice and the understanding of science need to be integrated with that of other human activities. It cannot, however, be materialistic, but must embrace the spiritual and mental as well as the material aspects of existence, and must attempt to do so on a truly monistic, unitary philosophic basis.

Finally it must be an evolutionary as opposed to a static or ideal humanism. It is essential for Unesco to adopt an evolutionary approach. If it does not do so, its philosophy will be a false one, its humanism at best partial, at worst misleading. We will justify this assertion in detail later. Here it is only necessary to recall that in the last few decades it has been possible to develop an extended or **general theory of evolution which can provide the necessary intellectual scaffolding for modern humanism**. It not only shows us man's place in nature and his relations to the rest of the phenomenal universe, not only gives us a description of the various types of evolution and the various trends and directions within them, but **allows us to distinguish desirable and undesirable trends**, and to demonstrate the existence of progress in the cosmos. And finally it shows us man as now the sole trustee of further evolutionary progress, and gives us important guidance as to the courses he should avoid and those he should pursue if he is to achieve that progress.

An evolutionary approach provides the link between natural science and human history; it teaches us the need to think in the dynamic terms of speed and direction rather than in the static ones of momentary position or quantitative achievement; it not only shows us the origin and biological roots of our human values, but gives us some basis and external standards for them among the apparently neutral mass of natural phenomena; and it is indispensable in enabling us to pick out, among the chaotic welter of conflicting tendencies to-day, those trends and activities and methods which Unesco should emphasise and facilitate.

Thus the general philosophy of Unesco should, it seems, be a scientific world humanism, global in extent and evolutionary in background. What are the further implications, practical as well as theoretical, of such an outlook? We must examine these in some detail before coming down to a consideration of Unesco's activity section by section." - 7

"Our first task must be to clarify the notion of desirable and undesirable directions of evolution, for on this will depend our attitude to human progress - to the possibility of progress in the first place, and then to its definition." - 8

"But once more a new and more efficient method of [evolutionary] change is available. It becomes available to man through his distinctively human properties of speech and conceptual thought, just as Natural Selection became available to life as a result of its distinctive properties of reproduction and variation. Objectively speaking, **the new method consists of cumulative tradition**, which forms the basis of that social heredity by means of which human societies change and develop. But the new method also has a subjective aspect of great importance. Cumulative tradition, like all other distinctively human activities, is largely based on conscious processes - on knowledge, on purpose, on

conscious feeling, and on conscious choice. Thus the struggle for existence that underlies natural selection is increasingly replaced by conscious selection, a struggle between ideas and values in consciousness. [...]

Evolution in the human sector consists mainly of changes in the form of society; in tools and machines, in new ways of utilising the old innate potentialities, instead of in the nature of these potentialities, as in the biological sector. [...] Nor does it mean that man's innate mental powers could not be improved. They certainly were improved (presumably be [sic] natural selection) in the earliest stages of his career, [...] and they could certainly be improved further by deliberate eugenic measures, if we consciously set ourselves to improve them. Meanwhile, however, it is in social organisation, in machines, and in ideas that human evolution is mostly made manifest." - 9

Eugenics

In the philosophy outlined above, there is a lot of high sounding idealistic language about equality. For example the quote below.

"Further, that humanism must clearly be a world humanism, both in the sense of seeking to bring in all the peoples of the world, and of treating all peoples and all individuals within each people as equals in terms of human dignity, mutual respect, and educational opportunity." - 7

Of course, for eugenicists like Huxley, some are more equal than others.

"There are instances of biological inequality which are so gross that they cannot be reconciled at all with the principle of equal opportunity. Thus low-grade mental defectives cannot be offered equality of educational opportunity, nor are the insane equal with the sane before the law or in respect of most freedoms. However, the full implications of the fact of human inequality have not often been drawn and certainly need to be brought out here, as they are very relevant to Unesco's task. [...]

Still more important, any such generalisations will give us a deeper understanding of the variations of human nature, and in doing so will enable us correctly to discount the ideas of men of this or that type. [...]

There remains the second type of inequality. This has quite other implications; for, whereas variety is in itself desirable, the existence of weaklings, fools, and moral defectives cannot but be bad. It is also much harder to reconcile politically with the current democratic doctrine of equality. In face of it, indeed, the principle of equality of opportunity must be amended to read "**equality of opportunity within the limits of aptitude.**" " - 18

"Biological inequality is, of course, the bedrock fact on which all of eugenics is predicated. But it is not usually realised that the two types of inequality have quite different and indeed contrary eugenic implications. The inequality of mere difference is

desirable, and the preservation of human variety should be one of the two primary aims of eugenics. But the inequality of level or standard is undesirable, and the other primary aim of eugenics should be the raising of the mean level of all desirable qualities. While there may be dispute over certain qualities, there can be none over a number of the most important, such as a healthy constitution, a high innate general intelligence, or a special aptitude such as that for mathematics or music.

At the moment, it is probable that the indirect effect of civilisation is dysgenic instead of eugenic; and in any case it seems likely that the dead weight of genetic stupidity, physical weakness, mental instability, and disease-proneness, which already exist in the human species, will prove too great a burden for real progress to be achieved. Thus even though **it is quite true that any radical eugenic policy will be for many years politically and psychologically impossible, it will be important for Unesco to see that the eugenic problem is examined with the greatest care, and that the public mind is informed of the issues at stake so that much that now is unthinkable may at least become thinkable.**" - 21

"To adjust the principle of democratic equality to the fact of biological inequality is a major task for the world, and one which will grow increasingly more urgent as we make progress towards realising equality of opportunity. To promote this adjustment, **a great deal of education of the general public will be needed** as well as much new research; and in both these tasks Unesco can and should co-operate."

"It is, however, essential that eugenics should be brought entirely within the borders of science, for, as already indicated, **in the not very remote future the problem of improving the average quality of human beings is likely to become urgent; and this can only be accomplished by applying the findings of a truly scientific eugenics.**" - 37

"The Age of the Common Man: the Voice of the People: majority rule: the importance of a large population: - ideas and slogans such as these form the background of much of our thinking, and tend, unless we are careful, towards the promotion of mediocrity, even if mediocrity in abundance, and at the same time, towards the discouragement of high and unusual quality." - 15

Evolutionary Values and the Quest for a Restatement of Morality

"Of special importance in man's evaluation of his own position in the cosmic scheme and of his further destiny is the fact that he is the heir, and indeed the sole heir, of evolutionary progress to date. When he asserts that he is the highest type of organism, he is not being guilty of anthropocentric vanity, but is enunciating a biological fact. Furthermore, he is not merely the sole heir of past evolutionary progress, but **the sole trustee for any that may be achieved in the future.** From the evolutionary point of view, the destiny of man may be summed up very simply: it is to realise the maximum progress in the minimum time. That is why the philosophy of Unesco must have an evolutionary background, and why the concept of progress cannot but occupy a central

position in that philosophy.

The analysis of evolutionary progress gives us certain criteria for judging the rightness or wrongness of our aims and activities, and the desirability or otherwise of the tendencies to be noted in contemporary history - tendencies of which Unesco must take account." - 12

"Thus Unesco's activities, while concerned primarily with providing richer development and fuller satisfactions for the individual, must always be undertaken in a social context; and many of its specific tasks will be concerned with the social means towards this general end - the improvement of social mechanisms or agencies, such as educational systems, research organisations, art centres, the press, and so forth. In particular, Unesco must clearly pay special attention to the **social mechanism of cumulative tradition in all its aspects, with the aim of ensuring that it is both efficient and rightly directed** in regard to its essential function of promoting human evolution." - 17

"Unesco cannot be neutral in the face of competing values. Even if it were to refuse to make a conscious choice between them, it would find that the necessity for action involved such a choice, so that it would be driven eventually to the unconscious assumption of a system of values. And any such system which is unconsciously assumed is less likely to be true than one which is consciously sought after and studied." - 39

"Unesco must accordingly promote the study of philosophy as an aid in the clarification of values, for the benefit of mankind in general. It must also do so in order to **have its own clearly thought-out scale of values** to guide it in its own operations, both positively in what it should undertake or assist, and negatively in what it should avoid or discourage.

Here it will be guided by **the philosophy of evolutionary humanism** which I adumbrated in my first chapter. Such a philosophy is scientific in that it constantly refers back to the facts of existence. It is the extension and reformulation of Paley's Natural Theology and those other philosophies which endeavour to deduce the attributes of the Creator from the properties of his creation. [...]

It will accordingly **relate its ethical values to the discernible direction of evolution**, using the fact of biological progress as their foundation, and shaping the superstructure to fit the principles of social advance. On this basis, **there is nothing immutable and eternal about ethics**, yet there are still ethical values which are general and lasting - namely those which promote a social organisation which will allow individuals the fullest opportunity for development and self-expression **consonant with the persistence and the progress of society**.

The social aspect of this dual function imposes itself because social mechanisms provide the chief basis for rapid human evolution, and it is only through improvement in social organisation that progress can be secured. [...]

Further, even if there are broad ethical principles which are general and lasting, yet their detailed formulation will and must change from age to age. The ethics of tribal life differ inevitably from those of feudalism or of industrial civilisation. Our ethical systems to-day are still largely predicated on a pre-scientific and nationally fragmented world. We have to relate them to our new knowledge and our new closeness to each other. [...] In general, we may say, it is becoming necessary to extend our personal ethical judgements and responsibilities to many collective and apparently impersonal actions - **in other words to undertake a considerable socialisation of ethics.**

It will be one of the major tasks of the Philosophy division of Unesco to stimulate, in conjunction with the natural and the social scientists, **the quest for a restatement of morality** that shall be in harmony with modern knowledge and adapted to the fresh functions imposed on ethics by the world of to-day.

Still more generally, it will have to stimulate the quest, so urgent in this time of over-rapid transition, for a world philosophy, a unified and unifying background of thought for the modern world." - 39

Conclusion

The next part of this series describes [the purpose of UNESCO](#), as outlined by Huxley, to mentally prepare the world for global political unification under a single world government. The remaining three parts of this series describe the major mechanisms used by UNESCO: [education](#), [science and the creative arts](#), and the [mass media](#).

[1] Quotes from Julian Huxley, *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946). Preparatory Commission of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. [pdf from UNESCO](#).

The Task of Unifying the World Mind

UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

May 26, 2008



As the first Director of UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), Sir Julian Sorell Huxley (1887-1975) wrote a paper entitled *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946) [1] in which he outlined his vision for the newly created international organisation (which grew out of the League of Nations' Institute of Intellectual Co-operation). According to Huxley, the guiding philosophy of UNESCO should be what he termed, World Evolutionary Humanism. The [previous article](#) in this series described this philosophy and its relation to eugenics. This article will outline the purpose of UNESCO, which is to mentally prepare the world for global political unification under a single world government. It will also introduce the broad reach of tools and techniques at UNESCO's disposal under the banners of Education, Science and Culture.

Facilitating World Government

From *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"In general, Unesco must constantly be testing its policies against the touchstone of evolutionary progress. A central conflict of our times is that between nationalism and internationalism, between the concept of many national sovereignties and one world sovereignty. Here the evolutionary touchstone gives an unequivocal answer. The key to man's advance, the distinctive method which has made evolutionary progress in the human sector so much more rapid than in the biological and has given it higher and more

satisfying goals, is the fact of cumulative tradition, the existence of a common pool of ideas which is self-perpetuating and itself capable of evolving. And this fact has had the immediate consequence of making the type of social organisation the main factor in human progress or at least its limiting framework.

Two obvious corollaries follow. First, that the more united man's tradition becomes, the more rapid will be the possibility of progress: several separate or competing or even mutually hostile pools of tradition **cannot possibly be so efficient as a single pool common to all mankind**. And secondly, that the best and only certain way of securing this will be through **political unification**. As history shows, unifying ideas *can* exert an effect across national boundaries. But, as history makes equally evident, that effect is a partial one and never wholly offsets the opportunities for conflict provided by the existence of separate sovereign political units.

The moral for Unesco is clear. The task laid upon it of promoting peace and security can never be wholly realised through the means assigned to it - education, science and culture. **It must envisage some form of world political unity, whether through a single world government or otherwise**, as the only certain means for avoiding war. However, world political unity is, unfortunately, a remote ideal, and in any case does not fall within the field of Unesco's competence. This does not mean that Unesco cannot do a great deal towards promoting peace and security. Specifically, **in its educational programme it can stress the ultimate need for world political unity and familiarise all peoples with the implications of the transfer of full sovereignty from separate nations to a world organization**. But, more generally, it can do a great deal to **lay the foundations on which world political unity can later be built**. It can help the peoples of the world to mutual understanding and to a realisation of the common humanity and common tasks which they share, as opposed to the nationalisms which too often tend to isolate and separate them." - 13

"With all this Unesco must face the fact that nationalism is still the basis of the political structure of the world, and must be prepared for the possibility that the forces of disruption and conflict may score a temporary victory. But even if this should occur, Unesco must strain every nerve to give a demonstration of the benefits, spiritual as well as material, to be obtained through a common pool of tradition, and specifically by international co-operation in education, science, and culture, so that even should another war break out, Unesco may survive it, and in any case so that the world will not forget." - 14

"[The UNESCO constitution] draws the notable conclusion, never before embodied in an official document, that a peace "based exclusively upon the political and economic arrangements of governments" would be inadequate, since it could not "secure the unanimous, lasting and sincere support of the peoples of the world," and that "the peace must therefore be founded, if it is not to fail, upon the **intellectual and moral solidarity of mankind**." " - 5

"As we have seen earlier, the unifying of traditions in a single common pool of

experience, awareness, and purpose is the necessary prerequisite for further major progress in human evolution. Accordingly, although political unification in some sort of world government will be required for the definitive attainment of this stage, **unification in the things of the mind is not only also necessary but can pave the way for other types of unification.** Thus in the past the **great religions** unified the thoughts and attitudes of large regions of the earth's surface; and in **recent times science**, both directly through its ideas and indirectly through its applications in shrinking the globe, **has been a powerful factor in directing men's thoughts to the possibilities of, and the need for, full world unity.**

Special attention should consequently be given by Unesco to the problem of constructing a unified pool of tradition for the human species as a whole. This, as indicated elsewhere, must include the unity-in-variety of the world's art and culture as well as the promotion of one single pool of scientific knowledge. But it must also eventually include a unified common outlook and a common set of purposes. **This will be the latest part of the task of unifying the world mind**; but Unesco must not neglect it while engaged on the easier jobs, like that of promoting a single pool of scientific knowledge and effort." - 17

UNESCO's Reach - Education

"Unesco - the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation - is by its title committed to two sets of aims. In the first place, it is international, and must serve the ends and objects of the United Nations, which in the long perspective are world ends, ends for humanity as a whole. And secondly it must foster and promote all aspects of education, science, and culture, in the **widest sense of those words.**" - 5

"It [education] is the process by means of which knowledge, skill, technique, understanding, ideas, emotional and spiritual attitudes, are transmitted from individual to individual and from generation to generation. It is also a major part of the process by which the latent potentialities of the individual are actualised and developed to their fullest extent. It includes the broad sense of adult education and self-education as well as the narrow sense of schooling and training. It is a special field with its own methods, an art which is in process of substituting a scientific basis for an empirical or an *a priori* one. But the scientific basis of education has not yet been fully explored, and what has already been discovered is neither widely enough known nor widely enough applied. Furthermore, it is a field which has never yet been adequately cultivated on the international level, and one whose international possibilities can still hardly be guessed at.

These things being so, it becomes clear that the approach of Unesco must adopt certain general principles concerning education - not only that it should equip the growing human being to earn a livelihood, not only that it should fit him to take his place as a member of the community and society into which he is born, but certain further principles, which have been lacking in many previous (and existing) systems of education.

First, that education can be and should be a permanent and continuing process; the mind is capable of growth throughout life, and provision must be made for assisting its growth - in other words for education - among adults of all ages and not only in children and young people.

Next, that education has a social as well as an individual function[...]

Thirdly, that scientific research is capable of **improving the technique of education** to a very large extent, and that accordingly Unesco must give every encouragement to research in this field, and to the full dissemination of its results.

Further, since the world to-day is in process of **becoming one, and since a major aim of Unesco must be to help in the speedy and satisfactory realisation of this process**, that Unesco must pay special attention to international education - **to education as a function of a world society**, in addition to its functions in relation to national societies, to regional or religious or intellectual groups, or to local communities." - 29

For more about UNESCO's application of education please read part 3 of this series entitled: [Education for World Government](#).

UNESCO's Reach - Science and Culture

"Unesco by definition and title, must be concerned with Education, with Science, and with Culture; and under its constitution it is expressly charged to concern itself also with the spread of information through all media of Mass Communication - in other words, the press, the cinema, the radio and television.

We must now take these major subjects and see how they should be approached and treated by Unesco. But before doing so, one or two general points should be underlined. In the first place, it is obvious that Science is not to be taken in the narrow sense in which it is sometimes employed in the English-speaking countries, as denoting the Mathematical and the Natural Sciences only, but **as broadly as possible, to cover all the primarily intellectual activities of man, the whole range of knowledge and learning**. This, then, includes the Natural Sciences, the Social Sciences, and the Humanities - in the logical German terminology, *Naturwissenschaft*, *Sozialwissenschaft*, and *Geisteswissenschaft*. It thus runs from mathematics to theology, from physics to philosophy, and includes such subjects as history and sociology, archaeology and the study of classical literatures, as well as chemistry or bacteriology, geology or social psychology. And, as we shall see in a moment, Unesco must consider all the applications of knowledge as well as its pure pursuit.

The word *Culture* too is used broadly in our title. First of all it embraces creative art, including literature and architecture as well as music and the dance, painting and the other visual arts; and, once more, the applications of art, in the form of decoration, industrial design, certain aspects of town-planning and landscaping, and so forth. Then it can be used in the sense of **cultivation of the mind** - directed towards the development

of its interests and faculties, acquaintance with the artistic and intellectual achievements both of our own and of past ages, some knowledge of history, some familiarity with ideas and the handling of ideas, a certain capacity for good judgment, critical sense, and independent thinking. In this sphere, we can speak of a high or a low level of culture in a community. And finally it can be employed in the broadest sense of all, the anthropological or sociological one, as denoting **the entire material and mental apparatus characteristic of a particular society**.

It is clear that Unesco must concern itself with the arts, as indispensable agencies both of individual and social expression, and for the full development and enrichment of personality. It must also concern itself with the level of culture in the second sense, since, cultural backwardness, like scientific or educational backwardness, are a drag on the rest of the world and an obstacle to the progress that we desire." - 25

For more on the use of science and culture to manipulate society in a desired direction please read part 4 of this series entitled: [Guiding Society Through Art and Science](#).

UNESCO's Reach - The Mass Media

"There are thus two tasks for the Mass Media division of Unesco, the one general, the other special. The special one is to **enlist the press and the radio and the cinema to the fullest extent** in the service of formal and adult education, of science and learning, of art and culture. The general one is to see that these agencies are used both to contribute to mutual comprehension between different nations and cultures, and also to **promote the growth of a common outlook** shared by all nations and cultures." - 60

For more on UNESCO's use of the mass media and other forms of communication on the public mind, please read the final article in this series entitled: [The Mass Media Division of UNESCO](#).

[1] Quotes from Julian Huxley, *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946). Preparatory Commission of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. [pdf from UNESCO](#).

Education for World Government

UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](#)

June 2, 2008

"I think the subject which will be of most importance politically is mass psychology. Mass psychology is, scientifically speaking, not a very advanced study [...] This study is immensely useful to practical men, whether they wish to become rich or to acquire the

government. It is, of course, as a science, founded upon individual psychology, but hitherto it has employed rule-of-thumb methods which were based upon a kind of intuitive common sense. Its importance has been enormously increased by the growth of **modern methods of propaganda. Of these the most influential is what is called 'education'**. Religion plays a part, though a diminishing one; the Press, the cinema and the radio play an increasing part." - Bertrand Russell, 1952 (p40)



As the first Director of UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), Sir Julian Sorell Huxley (1887-1975) wrote a paper entitled *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946) [1] in which he outlined his vision for the newly created international organisation (which grew out of the League of Nations' Institute of Intellectual Co-operation). According to Huxley, the guiding philosophy of UNESCO should be what he termed, World Evolutionary Humanism. [Part 1](#) in this series described this philosophy and its relation to eugenics. The [second article](#) outlined the purpose of UNESCO, which is to mentally prepare the world for global political unification under a single world government. This article will describe the use of education by UNESCO, as an essential technique of forming the minds of the young as well as the old.

Julian Huxley, an evolutionary biologist, humanist, and ardent internationalist held many titles including: Secretary of the Zoological Society of London (1935-42), first president of the British Humanist Association (1963), Vice-President (1937-44) and President (1959-62) of the British Eugenics Society. He was also a founding member of the World Wild Life Fund, coined the term "transhumanism" (as a means of disguising eugenics) and gave two Galton memorial lectures (1936, 1962). Huxley also received many awards including the Darwin Medal of the Royal Society (1956), UNESCO's Kalinga Prize (1953) and the Special Award of the Lasker Foundation in the category Planned Parenthood - World Population (1959) to name but a few. He is also the Grandson of Thomas Huxley (Darwin's Bulldog) and brother of author Aldous Huxley.

Literacy Campaigns for World Government

From *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"From this global aim, another principle immediately follows. It is that Unesco should devote special attention to the levelling up of educational, scientific and cultural facilities in all backward sectors where these are below the average, whether these be geographical regions, or under-privileged sections of a population. To use another metaphor, it must attempt to let in light on the world's dark areas.

The reason for this is plain. For one thing **it will be impossible for humanity to acquire a common outlook if large sections of it are the illiterate inhabitants of a mental world entirely different from that in which a fully educated man can have his being**, a world of superstition and petty tribalism in place of one of scientific advance and possible unity. Thus mass campaigns against illiteracy and for a **common fundamental education** must form part of Unesco's programme. Further, a satisfactory **common scale of values** can obviously not be attained so long as large sections of mankind are preoccupied with the bare material and physiological needs of food, shelter, and health." - 17

"On reflection, however, it is speedily seen that a campaign for mere literacy is not enough. It needs to be linked with the general system of education, and, among illiterates above school age, to be coupled with general social education, notably in relation to health, current methods of agriculture, and citizenship. That is why, in Unesco's programme, **literacy campaigns have been merged in a more comprehensive study of Fundamental Education.**" - 30

Public Relations as Adult Education

"To conclude with a more immediate problem, Unesco is proposing to support further study and experiment in regard to the **discussion group method**. Every extension of democracy, whether political, economic, or cultural, makes it more necessary to have a general awareness among the people at large of the problems, tasks, and possibilities which confront them. The discussion group, **properly led and properly serviced** by bodies such as the Bureau of Current Affairs, seems to be one of the most fruitful methods to this end, and Unesco must investigate its potentialities in different types of societies and for different special purposes.

A converse problem is that of **Public Relations**, notably in government. **These are in modern conditions indispensable agencies of adult education for citizenship.** But they can readily degenerate into organs of justification for government departments or ministers, and can equally readily be distorted into mere propaganda organisations. The most careful study of their uses and abuses, their possibilities and limitations, from the joint angle of education and social science, is of great importance and considerable urgency at the present stage in human evolution." - 33

"Higher" Education for Inferior Types

"But it would also, we may assume, have to include provision for some new type of higher education for those with quantitatively lower I.Q.s and aptitudes, who yet desire (or are desired by society), to devote some of their post-adolescent period to further education instead of to earning a living. And when the time comes, **it will obviously be for Unesco** to help in working out the requirements, both in content and methods, of this new type of higher education."

This is clearly manifested in our current western society, where young people attend University to attain little more than base level indoctrination and acclimate themselves to living with debt.

UNESCO in the Nursery

"One other item which Unesco should put on its programme as soon as possible is the study of the application of psycho-analysis and other schools of "deep" psychology to education. [...] This would mean an extension of education backwards from the nursery school to the nursery itself." - 33

The importance of education, especially of the very young was well emphasized by Lord Bertrand Russell (1872-1970) in his book *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952) [2]. Russell was a renowned British philosopher and mathematician who was an adamant internationalist and worked extensively on the education of young children. He was the founder of the Pugwash movement which used the spectre of Cold War nuclear annihilation to push for world government. Among many other prizes, Russell was awarded the Nobel Prize in Literature in 1950 and, like Julian Huxley, UNESCO's Kalinga prize (1957).

From Bertrand Russell's 1950 book *The Impact of Science on Society*:

"What is essential in mass psychology is the art of persuasion. If you compare a speech of Hitler's with a speech of (say) Edmund Burke, you will see what strides have been made in the art since the eighteenth century. What went wrong formerly was that people had read in books that man is a rational animal, and framed their arguments on this hypothesis. We now know that limelight and a brass band do more to persuade than can be done by the most elegant train of syllogisms. It may be **hoped that in time anybody will be able to persuade anybody of anything if he can catch the patient young and is provided by the State with money and equipment.**" - 40

It is to be expected that advances in physiology and psychology will give governments much more control over individual mentality than they now have even in totalitarian countries. Fichte laid it down that **education should aim at destroying free will, so that, after pupils have left school, they shall be incapable, throughout the rest of their lives, of thinking or acting otherwise than as their schoolmasters would have wished.** But in his day this was an unattainable ideal: what he regarded as the best system in existence produced Karl Marx. In future such failures are not likely to occur where there is dictatorship. **Diet, injections, and injunctions will combine, from a very early age,**

to produce the sort of character and the sort of beliefs that the authorities consider desirable, and any serious criticism of the powers that be will become psychologically impossible. Even if all are miserable, all will believe themselves happy, because the government will tell them that they are so." - 61

Russell also made it clear the importance of not allowing the public to know how their convictions were generated.

"Although this science will be diligently studied, **it will be rigidly confined to the governing class. The populace will not be allowed to know how its convictions were generated.** When the technique has been perfected, every government that has been in charge of education for a generation will be able to control its subjects securely without the need of armies or policemen [...]" - 41

More about Bertrand Russell's views on education can be found in this article entitled: [Mass Psychology and Education](#).

Conclusion

[Part 4](#) in this series describes the use of science and the creative arts in guiding society toward predetermined goals. The [final article](#) in this series outlines UNESCO's use of the mass media and other forms of communication in pursuit of its goals.

[1] Quotes from Julian Huxley, *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946). Preparatory Commission of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. [pdf from UNESCO](#).

[2] Quotes from Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN0-415-10906-X

Guiding Society Through Art and Science

UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](#)
June 9, 2008

"The completeness of the resulting control over opinion depends in various ways upon **scientific technique**. Where all children go to school, and all schools are controlled by the government, the authorities can close the minds of the young to everything contrary to official orthodoxy." - Bertrand Russell, 1952 [1]



As the first Director of UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), Sir Julian Sorell Huxley (1887-1975) wrote a paper entitled *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946) [2] in which he outlined his vision for the newly created international organisation (which grew out of the League of Nations' Institute of Intellectual Co-operation). According to Huxley, the guiding philosophy of UNESCO should be what he termed, World Evolutionary Humanism. [Part 1](#) in this series described this philosophy and its relation to eugenics. The [second article](#) outlined the purpose of UNESCO, which is to mentally prepare the world for global political unification under a single world government. The [previous article](#) described the use of education by UNESCO, as an essential technique of forming the minds of the young as well as the old. This article will examine the importance of the creative arts and sciences in guiding society towards predetermined goals.

Guiding Society with the Creative Arts

From *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"When art is thus unrepresentative or is neglected by **the dominant class or the authorities**, the state of affairs is bad for the community, which lacks the outlet and sounding-board which it ought to have in art, and turns to escapism or mere entertainment, to the sterile pursuit of the fossil past in place of the living present, or to bad art - cheap, vulgar, inadequate - instead of good. It is bad also for art, which tends to grow in upon itself, to become esoteric, incomprehensible except to the self-chosen clique, devoted to the sterile pursuit of art for art's sake instead of for life's sake, and so rootless that it ceases to have any social function worth mentioning. And, *a fortiori*, it is bad for the artist.

To remedy this state of affairs, we need to survey the whole problem of the patronage of the arts, most of which is inevitably, if in some ways regrettably, destined to swing over

into public patronage by the State or the local community, and out of the hands of the private patron. Public, like private patronage, has its dangers for the artist and for his art; we must try to guard against them. We must study the problem of the young artist - first how he is to keep himself alive before recognition comes, and secondly how he is to be made to feel not only a vital part of his community, but in some degree its mouthpiece. And of course this must go hand in hand with the education of the general public and of the authorities, local and central, to understand the value and significance of art in the life of a society.

We have already pointed out some of the social functions of art. Another exists in the field of public relations. Every country has now woken up to the need, in our complex modern world, of public relations, **which is but a new name for propaganda**, that term which unhappily has grown tarnished through misuse. In a world which must be planned, governments must often assume initiative and leadership; and for this leadership to be effective, the general public must be informed of the problem and of what is in the government's mind. This is the essential function of "public relations" in the modern State. But it is only a few pioneers, like Tallents and Grierson, who have begun to grasp how public relations should be conducted. **Art is necessary as part of the technique, since for most people art alone can effectively express the intangibles, and add the driving force of emotion to the cold facts of information.** "It is the artist alone in whose hands truth becomes impressive." Perhaps especially it is the art of drama which is most essential in bringing life to the issues of everyday life - but that art can, of course, operate elsewhere than on the stage - most notably on the films. Whatever the details, it remains true that one of the social functions of art is to make men feel their destiny, and to obtain a full comprehension, emotional as well as intellectual, of their tasks in life and their role in the community. **Rightfully used, it is one of the essential agencies for mobilising society for action.**

Each of the creative arts has its own special role to play in life. **Music makes the most direct approach to the emotions**, without the intervention of any barrier of language **other than its own**. The visual arts, besides revealing in tangible form the intenser vision or the private imaginings of the artist, have a special role to fill in relation to architecture; and fine architecture has its own role - of giving concrete expression to the pride and the functions of the community, whether city or class or nation (or, let us add, the international community), and of adding much-needed beauty to everyday life, especially in great urban agglomerations. Opera and ballet, each in its special way, symbolises and expresses emotional realities and, as Aristotle said of the drama, **"purges the soul"** of the spectator. Ballet, through its nature, is capable of exerting a strikingly direct and **almost physiological effect on the mind.**" - 54

"[...] Unesco must be careful that creative side of the arts shall not elude it." - 48

"The physical provision of beauty and art must, in the world of to-day, be largely an affair of government, whether central or local. For this, it is necessary that the men and women in charge of public affairs shall be aware of the value of art to the community. **This value lies** not merely in providing what is often thought of as self-centred or high-

brow enjoyment, but **in providing outlets for powerful human impulses, and so avoiding frustrations which are not only a cause of unhappiness, but may contribute to unrest, waste and disorder.**" - 51

"No other United Nations agency deals with the important question of seeing that **the arts are properly and fully applied**[...] Nor is any other agency concerning itself with such important applications of the sciences as the disciplining of the mind to produce so-called mystical experience and other high degree of spiritual satisfaction; or with **the application of psychology to the technique of government**, or to preventing the abuse or the exploitation of democracy." - 28

"[... UNESCO] should study **the practical applications of science and art as a particular social problem, to discover what are the reasons which prevent, frustrate or distort them, what are the effects of undue speed or undue delay. Such a study should be of considerable help in promoting the technical efficiency of this process** - a problem which will become steadily more pressing with the increase of scientific knowledge and of social complexity. And the third objective, the most difficult though perhaps also the most important, **is to relate the applications of science and art to each other and to a general scale of values, so as to secure a proper amount and rate of application in each field.** If such a task were satisfactorily carried out, and if its findings were acted upon, **this would constitute one of the most important contributions towards discovering and pursuing the desirable direction of human evolution** - in other words, true human welfare." - 28

For more on the desirable direction of human evolution, as envisioned by Huxley, please read the first part of this series entitled: [World Evolutionary Humanism, Eugenics and UNESCO.](#)

Scientific Technique

"However, it remains true that the scientific method is by far the most important means at our disposal for increasing the volume of our knowledge, the degree of our understanding, and the extent of our control, of objective phenomena; and further that the consequence of discovery in natural science may produce changes in human society (including often changes in our scale of values) greater than those brought about by any other means." - 35

"The scientific method has firmly established itself as the only reliable means by which we can increase both our knowledge of and our control over objective natural phenomena. **It is now being increasingly applied, though with modifications made necessary by the different nature of the raw material, to the study of man and his ways and works, and in the hands of the social sciences is likely to produce an increase in our knowledge of and control over the phenomena of human and social life,** almost as remarkable as that which in the hands of the natural sciences it has brought about and is still bringing about in regard to the rest of nature" - 34

For more on scientific technique please read this article entitled: [Scientific Technique and the Concentration of Power](#).

Conclusion

The [final article](#) in this series outlines UNESCO's use of the mass media and other forms of communication in pursuit of its goals.

[1] Quote from page 58 of Bertrand Russell, *The Impact of Science on Society* (1952). ISBN0-415-10906-X

[2] Quotes from Julian Huxley, *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946). Preparatory Commission of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. [pdf from UNESCO](#).

The Mass Media Division of UNESCO

UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy Part 5

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

June 16, 2008



"Public opinion is no phenomenon *sui generis*. It is in part the result of government policies and by definition politicians cannot hide behind their own creation. If some sectors of public opinion in the industrialized countries are immersed in the rhetoric and slogans associated with misunderstanding, then much of this may be inherited from their political leaders. And if these leaders are in part responsible for a situation which impedes acceptance of the need for change, then they themselves must be held responsible for changing this situation." - RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome, 1976 [1]

As the first Director of UNESCO (United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation), Sir Julian Sorell Huxley (1887-1975) wrote a paper entitled *UNESCO Its*

Purpose and Its Philosophy (1946) [2] in which he outlined his vision for the newly created international organisation (which grew out of the League of Nations' Institute of Intellectual Co-operation). According to Huxley, the guiding philosophy of UNESCO should be what he termed, [World Evolutionary Humanism](#). [Part 1](#) in this series described this philosophy and its relation to eugenics. The [second article](#) outlined the purpose of UNESCO, which is to mentally prepare the world for global political unification under a single world government. [Part 3](#) described the use of education by UNESCO, as an essential technique of forming the minds of the young as well as the old. The [previous article](#) examined the importance of the creative arts and sciences in guiding society towards predetermined goals. This final article will examine UNESCO's use of the mass media and other forms of communication towards obtaining its goals.

Julian Huxley, an evolutionary biologist, humanist, and ardent internationalist held many titles including: Secretary of the Zoological Society of London (1935-42), first president of the British Humanist Association (1963), Vice-President (1937-44) and President (1959-62) of the British Eugenics Society. He was also a founding member of the World Wild Life Fund, coined the term "transhumanism" (as a means of disguising eugenics) and gave two Galton memorial lectures (1936, 1962). Huxley also received many awards including the Darwin Medal of the Royal Society (1956), UNESCO's Kalinga Prize (1953) and the Special Award of the Lasker Foundation in the category Planned Parenthood - World Population (1959) to name but a few. He is also the Grandson of Thomas Huxley (Darwin's Bulldog) and brother of author Aldous Huxley.

Creating A Creed with the Techniques of Persuasion and Propaganda

From *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy*:

[*Italicised text* is original emphasis and **bolded text** is added by author.]

"Taking the **techniques of persuasion and information and true propaganda** that we have learnt to apply nationally in war, and deliberately bending them to the international tasks of peace, if necessary utilising them, as Lenin envisaged, to "overcome the resistance of millions" to desirable change. Using drama to reveal reality and art as the method by which, in Sir Stephen Tallent's words, "truth becomes impressive and living principle of action," and aiming to produce that concerted effort which, to quote Grierson once more, needs a background of faith and a sense of destiny. **This must be a mass philosophy, a mass creed, and it can never be achieved without the use of the media of mass communication. Unesco, in the press of its detailed work, must never forget this enormous fact.**" - 60

The mass creed that Huxley called world evolutionary humanism, is the same eugenics based creed that Charles Galton Darwin outlined in his book *The Next Million Years* (1952) [3]. Among other things, C. G. Darwin was president of the Eugenics Society (1953-59) before handing over responsibilities to Julian Huxley (1959-62).

From *The Next Million Years*:

"The detailed march of history will depend a great deal on the creeds held by the various branches of the human race. It cannot be presumed with any confidence that purely superstitious creeds will always be rejected by civilized communities, in view of the extraordinary credulity shown even now by many reputedly educated people. It is true that there may not be many at the present time, whose actions are guided by an inspection of the entrails of a sacrificial bull, but the progress has not been very great, for there are still many believers in palmistry and astrology. It is to be expected then that in the future, as in the past, there will be superstitions which will notably affect the course of history, and some of them, such as ancestor-worship, will have direct effects on the development of the human species. **But superstitious creeds will hardly be held by the highly intelligent, and it is precisely the creed of these that matters. Is it possible that there should arise a eugenic creed, which - perhaps working through what I have called the method of unconscious selection - should concern itself with the improvement of the inherent nature of man, instead of resting content with merely giving him good but impermanent acquired characters?** Without such a creed man's nature will only be changed through the blind operation of natural selection; with it he might aspire to do something towards really changing his destiny." - 202

For more on the importance of creeds in shaping the future please read [this article](#) about C. G. Darwin's *The Next Million Years*.

Mass Media Created Common Creed

This common creed, or philosophy referred to by Huxley and C. G. Darwin is described in detail in part 1 of this series ([World Evolutionary Humanism, Eugenics and UNESCO](#)). Below Huxley describes the use of the Mass Media division of UNESCO to create this common world philosophy and how it is necessary to "enlist the press and the radio and the cinema to the fullest extent".

"What are the main effects of these innovations [in mass communication], of which Unesco must take account? First, the possibility of a much wider dissemination of information of every sort, both within and across national boundaries. **This means that public opinion can be built up more rapidly and can be better informed** than ever before. [...]

Above and beyond all other interests and needs at the moment is the need for peace and the interest of large groups in every country in achieving peace. Merely by preaching peace we shall not achieve much. **We can achieve much by indirect methods** - by demonstrating the fact that interests and needs transcend national boundaries, and by building a world in which international co-operation is actually operative, and operates to promote better health, and full employment, and the provision of adequate food for all, and safety and ease of travel, and the spread of knowledge. Finally, however, we can achieve a good deal more if **we can give people the world over some simple philosophy of existence** of a positive nature which will spur them to act in place of the apathy, pessimism or cynicism which is so prevalent to-day, and to act in common instead of in separate groups." - 58

"There are thus two tasks for the Mass Media division of Unesco, the one general, the other special. The special one is to **enlist the press and the radio and the cinema to the fullest extent** in the service of formal and adult education, of science and learning, of art and culture. The general one is to see that these agencies are used both to contribute to mutual comprehension between different nations and cultures, and also to **promote the growth of a common outlook** shared by all nations and cultures." - 60

Other Form of Information Dissemination

"[...] documentary film as a form of public relations service" - 60

"As libraries grow, and as they become internationally more linked up, the need for a highly developed and uniform standard system of classification and cataloguing becomes urgent. Unesco must facilitate the search for such a system, and its international adoption." - 56

"There is already in existence a trend away from the old conception of a library as just a place to house books and other materials to the **new conception of a library as part of a public service**. Unesco must seek to promote this trend, must help in exploring ways by which librarians can anticipate the demands of the most varied groups, must help the movement towards popular and travelling libraries, and in general must help in discovering the right ways of making people use the library service in their everyday lives.

Unesco must seek to find new fields in which **the technique of the museum** can be useful. The Scandinavians have successfully developed the Folk Museum. But there are many other specialised types of museum possible - the local museum, the museum of history, of prehistory, of health, of education, of agriculture, of natural resources; a beginning has been made with some of these, but the principle needs developing in a comprehensive way, and with the latest techniques." - 56

[1] Quote from page 110 of Jan Tinbergen, *RIO: Reshaping the International Order: A Report to the Club of Rome* (1976). ISBN 0-525-04340-3

[2] Quotes from Julian Huxley, *UNESCO Its Purpose and Its Philosophy* (1946). Preparatory Commission of the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. [pdf from UNESCO](#).

[3] Quote from Charles Galton Darwin, *The Next Million Years* (1952).

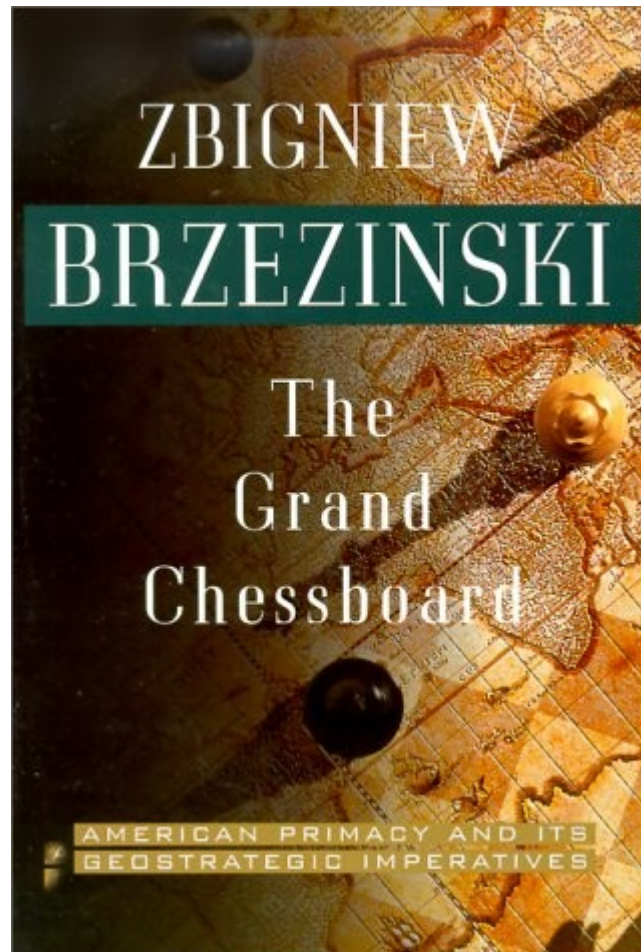


America's Role as the First, Only, and Last Truly Global Superpower

The Grand Chessboard Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

October 1, 2007



In Zbigniew Brzezinski's *The Grand Chessboard: American Primacy and Its Geostrategic Imperatives* (1997), he outlines his case for how current American global supremacy should be used to further a long running elite plan for the unification of the world under the dictates of the United Nations.

For those who don't know, among many other things, [Brzezinski](#) was an advisor to John F. Kennedy, Lyndon Johnson, Hubert Humphrey, and Jimmy Carter. He was also the first director of the Trilateral Commission and board member of the Council on Foreign Relations. Currently he is a [top foreign policy advisor](#) to the Barack Obama campaign for presidency.

Controlling Eurasia With American Imperial Power

From *The Grand Chessboard*:

"In brief, for the United States, Eurasian geostrategy involves the purposeful management of geostrategically dynamic states and the careful handling of geopolitically catalytic states, in keeping with the twin interests of America in the short-term preservation of its unique global power and in the long-run transformation of it into increasingly institutionalized global cooperation. To put it in a terminology that hearkens back to the more brutal age of ancient empires, the three grand imperatives of imperial geostrategy are to prevent collusion and maintain security dependence among the vassals, to keep tributaries pliant and protected, and to keep the barbarians from coming together." - 40

"...the issue of how a globally engaged America copes with the complex Eurasian power relationships - and particularly whether it prevents the emergence of a dominant and antagonistic Eurasian power -- remains central to America's capacity to exercise global primacy." - xiii

"A geostrategic issue of crucial importance is posed by China's emergence as a major power. The most appealing outcome would be to co-opt a democratizing and free-marketing China into a larger Asian regional framework of cooperation." - 54

"In effect, Japan should be America's global partner in tackling the new agenda of world affairs. A regionally preeminent China should become America's Far Eastern anchor in the more traditional domain of power politics, helping thereby to foster a Eurasian balance of power, with Greater China in Eurasia's East matching in that respect the role of an enlarging Europe in Eurasia's West." - 193

False Choice

Like a good con man, Brzezinski insists that there is only one alternative to American imperial domination of Eurasia and thus the world. Of course, there is little time to take advantage of this "narrow window of historical opportunity".

"In brief, America as the world's premier power does face a narrow window of historical opportunity. The present moment of relative global peace may be short lived. This prospect underlines the urgent need for an American engagement in the world that is deliberately focused on the enhancement of international geopolitical stability..." - 213

"The sudden emergence of the first and only global power has created a situation in which an equally quick end to its supremacy -- either because of America's withdrawal from the world or because of the sudden emergence of a successful rival -- would produce massive international instability. In effect, it would prompt **global anarchy**." [emphasis mine] - 30

"In that context, for some time to come -- for more than a generation -- America's status as the world's premier power is unlikely to be contested by any single challenger. No nation-state is likely to match America in the four key dimensions of power (military, economic, technological, and cultural) that cumulatively produce decisive global political clout. Short of a deliberate or unintentional American abdication, **the only real alternative to American global leadership in the foreseeable future is international anarchy**. In that respect, it is correct to assert that America has become, as President Clinton put it, the world's "indispensable nation." " [emphasis mine] - 195

The Legacy of American Imperialism is United Nations Control

"Accordingly, once American leadership begins to fade, America's current global predominance is unlikely to be replicated by any single state. Thus, the key question for the future is "What will America bequeath to the world as the enduring legacy of its primacy?" " - 210

"Meeting these challenges is America's burden as well as its unique responsibility. Given the reality of American democracy, an effective response will require generating a public understanding of the continuing importance of American power in shaping a widening framework of stable geopolitical cooperation, one that simultaneously averts global anarchy and successfully defers the emergence of a new power challenge. These two goals-- averting global anarchy and impeding the emergence of a power rival-- are inseparable from **the longer-range definition of the purpose of America's global engagement, namely, that of forging an enduring framework of global geopolitical cooperation.**" [emphasis mine] - 214

"In brief, the U.S. policy goal must be unapologetically twofold: to perpetuate America's own dominant position for at least a generation and preferably longer still; and to create a geopolitical framework that can absorb the inevitable shocks and strains of social-political change while evolving into the geopolitical core of shared responsibility for peaceful **global management**. A prolonged phase of gradually expanding cooperation with key Eurasian partners, both stimulated and arbitrated by America, can also help to foster **the preconditions for an eventual upgrading of the existing and increasingly antiquated UN [United Nations] structures. A new distribution of responsibilities and privileges** can then take into account the changed realities of global power, so drastically different from those of 1945." [emphasis mine] - 215

In Closing

My [next article](#) will examine the obstacles to the effective use of American imperial power as well as the methods described by Brzezinski to be used to guide the world into this new system including the necessary decay of American primacy.

A fitting way to end this article is with the final paragraph from *The Grand Chessboard*:

"In the course of the next several decades, a functioning structure of global cooperation, based on geopolitical realities, could thus emerge and gradually assume the mantle of the world's current "regent," which has for the time being assumed the burden of responsibility for world stability and peace. Geostrategic success in that cause would represent a fitting legacy of America's role as the first, only, and last truly global superpower." - 215

Cultural Decay and Motivating Empire

The Grand Chessboard Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

October 8, 2007



Zbigniew Brzezinski

Zbigniew Brzezinski's described in his book *The Grand Chessboard: American Primacy and Its Geostrategic Imperatives* (1997), how the focus of American global primacy should be to unify the world under the dictates of the United Nations. This was described in my first article entitled [America's Role as the First, Only, and Last Truly Global Superpower](#).

There are many problems associated with the emergence of the United Nations out of the

ashes of the American empire. Brzezinski makes clear his distain for the limitations that "populist democracy" puts on his desired movements around the Eurasian chessboard and his revulsion at the potential for an "impotent global power".

"It is also a fact that America is too democratic at home to be autocratic abroad. **This limits the use of America's power, especially its capacity for military intimidation.** Never before has a populist democracy attained international supremacy. But **the pursuit of power is not a goal that commands popular passion**" [emphasis mine] - 35

"A genuinely populist democracy has never before attained international supremacy. The pursuit of power and especially the economic costs and human sacrifice that the exercise of such power often requires are not generally congenial to democratic instincts. **Democratization is inimical to imperial mobilization.**" [emphasis mine] - 210

"Indeed, the critical uncertainty regarding the future may well be whether America might become the first superpower unable or unwilling to wield its power. Might it become an impotent global power?" - 210

Four Key Dimensions of Power

"In that context, for some time to come-- for more than a generation-- America's status as the world's premier power is unlikely to be contested by any single challenger. No nation-state is likely to match America in the four key dimensions of power (military, economic, technological, and **cultural**) that cumulatively produce decisive global political clout." [emphasis mine] - 195

Little needs to be said about the first three dimensions of power; military, economic and technological. The fourth dimension, culture, is very important and rarely given appropriate attention. Brzezinski and the elite above and around him are well aware of the power of the creation and manipulation of culture. It is an essential component to convincing the American public to execute the elite designed imperial goals as well as the eventual and necessary removal of American primacy to make way for the emergence of the United Nations' rise to dominance.

American Culture and the Demise of Empire

The current culture in America is aimed at the ruination of the American society and the empire few Americans realize they are a part of. This process requires many different things, but Brzezinski highlights the major themes; lack of association with empirical accomplishments and goals, lack of social cohesion, individual decadence, etc.

"Moreover, most Americans by and large do not derive any special gratification from their country's new status as the sole global superpower. Political "triumphalism" connected with America's victory in the Cold War has generally tended to receive a cold reception" - 36

"More generally, cultural change in America may also be uncongenial to the **sustained exercise abroad of genuinely imperial power**. That exercise requires a **high degree of doctrinal motivation, intellectual commitment, and patriotic gratification**. Yet the dominant culture of the country has become increasingly fixated on mass entertainment that has been heavily dominated by personally hedonistic and socially escapist themes. The cumulative effect has made it increasingly difficult to mobilize the needed political consensus on behalf of sustained, and also occasionally costly, American leadership abroad. Mass communications have been playing a particularly important role in that regard, generating a strong revulsion against any selective use of force that entails even low levels of casualties." [emphasis mine] - 211

"In addition, both America and Western Europe have been finding it difficult to cope with the cultural consequences of social hedonism and the dramatic decline in the centrality of religious-based values in society. (The parallels with the decline of the imperial systems summarized in chapter 1 [Rome for example] are striking in that respect.) The resulting cultural crisis has been compounded by the spread of drugs and, especially in America, by its linkage to the racial issue. Lastly, the rate of economic growth is no longer able to keep up with growing material expectations, with the latter stimulated by a culture that places a premium on consumption." - 212

Proper Motivation

Brzezinski's geostrategic imperatives will require a final surge for the dying American empire. To accomplish this, he recognizes the need for the sudden emergence of a "direct external threat".

"Moreover, as America becomes an increasingly multicultural society, it may find it more difficult to fashion a consensus on foreign policy issues, except in the circumstances of a **truly massive and widely perceived direct external threat**. Such a consensus generally existed throughout World War II and even during the Cold War." [emphasis mine] - 211

"It is also a fact that America is too democratic at home to be autocratic abroad. This limits the use of America's power, especially its capacity for military intimidation. Never before has a populist democracy attained international supremacy. But the pursuit of power is not a goal that commands popular passion, except in conditions of **a sudden threat or challenge to the public's sense of domestic well-being**. The economic self-denial (that is, defense spending) and the human sacrifice (casualties **even** among professional soldiers) required in the effort are uncongenial to democratic instincts. Democracy is inimical to imperial mobilization." [emphasis mine] - pg 35

This was provided four years later by the attacks of 9/11.

Terrorist threat

Brzezinski does however highlight nicely the inherent feebleness of today's direct external threat - Islamic fundamentalism.

"A possible challenge to American primacy from Islamic fundamentalism could be part of the problem in this unstable region. By exploiting religious hostility to the American way of life and taking advantage of the Arab-Israeli conflict, Islamic fundamentalism could undermine several pro-Western Middle Eastern governments and eventually jeopardize American regional interests, especially in the Persian Gulf. However, without political cohesion and in the absence of a single genuinely powerful Islamic state, a challenge from Islamic fundamentalism would lack a geopolitical core and would thus be more likely to express itself through diffuse violence." - 53

But, he does also underscore the usefulness of terrorism, or the threat of terrorism to push his ideas.

"It is also noteworthy that international conflicts and acts of terrorism have so far been remarkably devoid of any use of the weapons of mass destruction. How long that self-restraint may hold is inherently unpredictable, but the increasing availability, not only to states but also to organized groups, of the means to inflict massive casualties-- by the use of nuclear or bacteriological weapons-- also inevitably increases the probability of their employment." - 213

Creating the New Global System With Culture

The planned decay, or collapse, of the American empire must coincide with the emergence of the United Nations. Brzezinski mentions the tool to be used to generate a more international culture required for the acceptance of and obedience to global government.

"These efforts will have the added historical advantage of benefiting from the new web of global linkages that is growing exponentially outside the more traditional nation-state system. That web-- woven by **multinational corporations**, **NGOs** (nongovernmental organizations, with many of them transnational in character) and **scientific communities** and reinforced by the **Internet**-- already creates an informal global system that is inherently congenial to more institutionalized and inclusive global cooperation." [emphasis mine] - 215

The use of multinational corporations should need no explanation with the almost daily international corporate mergers, interdependence derived from the separation of production and consumption, and the uniformity of products across the entire globe. NGOs and the scientific communities are hard at work pushing for international institutions in their rabid campaign against global warming. The internet too, is a powerful tool in promoting a global digital culture.

My next article will draw attention to Brzezinski's call for the expansion of the European Union and NATO, the establishment of an Asian Union, and his work with the Council on Foreign Relations and the Trilateral Commission in forming an American Union.

Supranational Unions As A Stepping Stone

The Grand Chessboard Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

October 15, 2007



An important step in establishing a world government run by the United Nations is the development of smaller multinational trade and political unions. This step allows for a gradual weakening of nationalistic emotions in the respective countries as borders are slowly erased. It also develops a sense of normalcy with having multinational bureaucracies replacing the roles that national governments formerly played.

This process is strongly supported by Zbigniew Brzezinski in his book *The Grand Chessboard: American Primacy and Its Geostrategic Imperatives* (1997). As discussed [here](#), Brzezinski makes it plainly clear that the role of the American empire is to pave the way for the emergence of the United Nations as a world government. The tools used for this as well as the necessary fall of the American empire were previously discussed [here](#).

European Union

From *The Grand Chessboard*:

"By pioneering in the integration of nation-states into a shared **supranational economic and eventually political union**, Europe is also pointing the way toward larger forms of postnational organization, beyond the narrow visions and the destructive passions of the age of nationalism." [emphasis mine] - 57

Brzezinski makes clear the need for the expansion of the European Union into central Europe and especially the absorption of a newly independent Ukraine. The expansion of the European Union eastward was to be preceded by the expansion of NATO. All of these objectives are slowly being implemented as can be seen by events like the "Orange Revolution" in the Ukraine.

"In the current circumstances, the expansion of NATO to include Poland, the Czech Republic, and Hungary -- probably by 1999 -- appears to be likely. After this initial but significant step, it is likely that any subsequent expansion of the alliance will either be coincidental with or will follow the expansion of the EU. The latter involves a much more complicated process, both in the number of qualifying stages and in the meeting of membership requirements (see chart on page 83). Thus, even the first admissions into the EU from Central Europe are not likely before the year 2002 or perhaps somewhat later. Nonetheless, after the first three new NATO members have also joined the EU, both the EU and NATO will have to address the question of extending membership to the Baltic republics, Slovenia, Romania, Bulgaria, and Slovakia, and perhaps also, eventually, to Ukraine." - 81

"It follows, therefore, that states that are in a position to begin and are invited to undertake accession talks with the EU should automatically also be viewed henceforth as subject in effect to NATO's presumptive protection." - 83

"Given the growing consensus regarding the desirability of admitting the nations of Central Europe into both the EU and NATO, the practical meaning of this question focuses attention on the future status of the Baltic republics and perhaps also that of Ukraine." - 50

Asian Union

"A geostrategic issue of crucial importance is posed by China's emergence as a major power. The most appealing outcome would be to co-opt a democratizing and free-marketing China into **a larger Asian regional framework of cooperation**." [emphasis mine] - 54

American Union

Brzezinski's [roles as the first director of the Trilateral Commission and a board member of the Council on Foreign Relations](#) directly involves him in the current process of creating the North American Union. A nice video summary of the process and some of the important players can be [watched here](#). This plan includes the creation of a [single currency](#) tentatively called the Amero, which was [recently stated](#) publicly as a 'possibility'

by the governor of the Bank of Canada, David Dodge.

It should also be stressed that the formation of the North American Union is a stepping stone to a wider American Union encompassing the whole of South America. Much the same way the European Union initially began as a Western European Union.

Inter-Union Integration

The establishment of the three main economic and political blocks will gradually be united into a single global form. This process recommended by Brzezinski is the exact same process used to initiate the three separate unions; free trade agreements.

"...the United States would do well to consider the adoption of an **American-Japanese free trade agreement**, thereby creating a **common American-Japanese economic space**. Such a step, formalizing the growing linkage between the two economies, would provide the geopolitical underpinning both for America's continued presence in the Far East and for Japan's constructive global engagement." [emphasis mine] - 192

"Tokyo can carve out a globally influential role by cooperating closely with the United States regarding what might be called the new agenda of global concerns, while avoiding any futile and potentially counterproductive effort to become a regional power itself. The task of American statesmanship should hence be to steer Japan in that direction. **An American-Japanese free trade agreement, creating a common economic space**, would fortify the connection and promote the goal, and hence its utility should be jointly examined." [emphasis mine] - 208

"**A Transatlantic Free Trade Agreement**, already advocated by a number of prominent Atlantic leaders, could also mitigate the risk of growing economic rivalry between a more united EU and the United States. In any case, the EU's eventual success in burying the centuries-old European nationalist antagonisms, with their globally disruptive effects, would be well worth some gradual diminution in America's decisive role as Eurasia's current arbitrator." [emphasis mine] - 200

Once this process fully takes hold and American primacy fades the United Nations will emerge as a global government.

"In brief, the U.S. policy goal must be unapologetically twofold: to perpetuate America's own dominant position for at least a generation and preferably longer still; and to create a geopolitical framework that can absorb the inevitable shocks and strains of social-political change while evolving into the geopolitical core of shared responsibility for peaceful **global management**. A prolonged phase of gradually expanding cooperation with key Eurasian partners, both stimulated and arbitrated by America, can also help to **foster the preconditions for an eventual upgrading of the existing and increasingly antiquated UN [United Nations] structures**. A new distribution of **responsibilities and privileges** can then take into account the changed realities of global power, so drastically different from those of 1945." [emphasis mine] - 215

Interdependence and the Luxury of War

The Grand Chessboard Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

October 22, 2007



The following is a series of loosely linked topics taken from Zbigniew Brzezinski's book *The Grand Chessboard: American Primacy and Its Geostrategic Imperatives* (1997). These topics did not fit in to my previous articles about this book but are important topics in their own right and still should be addressed.

The first three articles in this series described the [use of American imperial power](#) to bring about world government, the [techniques used](#) to bring about the fall of the American empire and the rise of the United Nations, and [the purpose of supranational unions](#) within that agenda.

War, a Luxury of the Poor

War is an extraordinary tool for changing the culture of nations into the designs of the elite. The side being attacked and the side doing the attacking are both drastically altered

by the process. With this in mind, the statement by Brzezinski, highlighted below, is referring to the usefulness of war to the elite of those countries and is coldly serious.

From *The Grand Chessboard*:

"That lack of confidence has been intensified by widespread disappointment with the consequences of the end of the Cold War. Instead of a "new world order" based on consensus and harmony, "things which seemed to belong to the past" have all of a sudden become the future. Although ethnic-national conflicts may no longer pose the risk of a central war, they do threaten the peace in significant parts of the globe. Thus, war is not likely to become obsolete for some time to come. With the more-endowed nations constrained by their own higher technological capacity for self-destruction as well as by self-interest, **war may have become a luxury that only the poor peoples of this world can afford.** In the foreseeable future, the impoverished two-thirds of humanity may not be motivated by the restraint of the privileged." [emphasis mine] - 213

Welfare State

"By the mid-nineties, however, these impulses had faded. Economic recovery by and large has been achieved; if anything, **the problem Europe increasingly faces is that of an excessively burdensome welfare system** that is sapping its economic vitality..." [emphasis mine] - 60

I highlighted the above quote by Brzezinski because he is currently a [top foreign policy advisor](#) to the Barack Obama's campaign to be the Democratic party's presidential candidate. Would those words not flow nicely out of an angry right-wing TV commentator? Just one more reason not to believe in the false left-right paradigm.

Global Interdependence

One of the favourite buzzwords, never too far from the lips of the globalists, is interdependence. Brzezinski demonstrates that the real purpose is to create dependence, and therefore servitude to the organizing body. He discusses this in the context of the break up of the Soviet Union.

"In its narrowest form, the "near abroad" priority involved the perfectly reasonable proposition that Russia must first concentrate on relations with the newly independent states, especially as all of them remained tied to Russia by the realities of the **deliberately fostered Soviet policy of promoting economic interdependence** among them. That made both economic and geopolitical sense. The "common economic space," of which the new Russian leaders spoke often, was a reality that could not be ignored by the leaders of the newly independent states. **Cooperation, and even some integration, was an economic necessity.** Thus, it was not only normal but desirable to promote joint CIS [Commonwealth of Independent States] institutions in order to reverse the economic disruptions and fragmentation produced by the political breakup of the Soviet Union." [emphasis mine] - 106

KNOWLEDGE DRIVEN REVOLUTION

Full Spectrum Information Warfare

Information Operation Roadmap Part 1

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

November 5, 2007



When the US military refers to full spectrum domination, they truly mean full spectrum. Information operations or information warfare is a key part of the military battlespace. Recently, a document entitled [*Information Operation Roadmap*](#) was declassified by the Pentagon because of a Freedom of Information Act request by the National Security Archive at George Washington University. The document [was described by](#) the Council on Foreign Relations' website as:

"A 2003 Pentagon document previously classified as 'noFORN' (not for release to foreign nationals, including allies), this report details the US military's information operations, including psychological operations, electronic warfare, and involvement in foreign journalism. The document was made public by the National Security Archive on January 26, 2006."

On Par with Air, Ground, Maritime and Special Operations

The importance of information warfare is clearly laid out in this document.

"Key assumptions. Information, always important in warfare, is now **critical to military success** and will only become more so in the foreseeable future. Three key assumptions underscore the growing importance of information:

- (U) Effectively communicating U.S. Government (USG) capabilities and intentions is an important means of combating the plans of our adversaries. The ability to rapidly disseminate **persuasive information to diverse audiences in order to directly influence their decision-making** is an increasingly powerful means of deterring aggression." [emphasis mine] - 3

The major thrust of the document was that information operations should be centralized under the Office of the Secretary of Defence and made a core military competency.

"Objective: IO [information operations] becomes a core competency. The importance of **dominating the information spectrum** explains the objective of **transforming IO into a core military competency on a par with air, ground, maritime and special operations**. The charge to the IO Roadmap oversight panel was to develop as concrete a set of action recommendations as possible to make IO a core competency, which in turn required identifying the essential prerequisites to become a core military competency." [emphasis mine] - 4

Uniformity in Message and Themes

The major reason for centralizing the information operations under a single command was to create consistency between the various segments of the Pentagon's information operations.

"IO requires **coordination** with public affairs and civil military operations to complement the objectives of these related activities and **ensure message consistency**." [emphasis mine] - 23

"- (U) The USG [US Government] can not execute an effective communication strategy that facilitates military campaigns if **various organs of Government disseminate inconsistent messages** to foreign audiences. Therefore, it is important that policy differences between all USG Departments and Agencies be resolved to the extent that they **shape themes and messages**."

- (U) **All DoD [Department of Defense] information activities, including information operations**, which are conducted at the strategic, operational, and tactical level, should reflect and be **consistent with broader national security policy and strategy objectives**." [emphasis mine] - 25

"Coordinating information activities. Major DoD "information activities" include public affairs, military support to public diplomacy and PSYOP [psychological operations]. The State Department maintains the lead for public diplomacy, the [half line redacted] and the International Broadcasting Board of Governors maintains the lead for broadcasting USG messages overseas, often with DoD in a supporting role. DoD has consistently maintained that the **information activities of all these agencies must be integrated and coordinated to ensure the promulgation of consistent themes and messages**." [emphasis mine] - 25

A Trained and Ready Career Force

With the ascension of information operations into a core military competency the document recommended, under the heading "A Trained and Ready Career Force" that the:

"DoD [Department of Defence] requires a cadre of IO professionals capable of planning and executing fully integrated IO in support of Combatant Commanders. An IO career force should be afforded promotion and advancement opportunities commensurate with other warfighting areas and provided opportunities for advancement to senior executive or flag level rank." - 32

Support

The forward of this document was signed by then Secretary of Defence Donald H. Rumsfeld which contained the following statement of support:

"I approve the Roadmap recommendations and direct the Services, Combatant Commands and DoD Agencies to fully support implementation of this plan." - iv

What Are Information Operations?

This document defined information operations as follows:

"The integrated employment of the core capabilities of Electronic Warfare, Computer Network Operations, Psychological Operations, Military Deception and Operations Security, in concert with specified supporting and related capabilities, to influence, disrupt, corrupt or usurp adversarial human and automated decisions-making while protecting our own." - 22

The following series of articles will examine the Pentagon's intention of gaining full spectrum dominance in information warfare. Including, [dominating the electro-magnetic spectrum](#) and [fighting the internet](#). Also, I will expand on the use of [psychological operations or PSYOP](#) as defined by the *Information Operation Roadmap* and [if any limits exist in information warfare](#).

Maximum Control of the Entire Electro-Magnetic Spectrum

Information Operation Roadmap Part 2

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

November 12, 2007



In 2003, then Secretary of Defence Donald Rumsfeld signed a document called the [Information Operation Roadmap](#) which outlined, among other things, the Pentagon's desire to dominate the entire electromagnetic spectrum.

If you are unfamiliar with this document, more detail can be found in a previous article [here](#).

Dominate

From the *Information Operation Roadmap*:

"We Must Improve Network and Electro-Magnetic Attack Capability. To prevail in an information-centric fight, it is increasingly important that **our forces dominate the electromagnetic spectrum with attack capabilities**." [emphasis mine] - 6

"Cover the full range of EW [Electronic Warfare] missions and capabilities, including navigation warfare, offensive counterspace, control of adversary radio frequency systems that provide location and identification of friend and foe, etc." - 61

"Provide a future EW capability sufficient to provide **maximum control of the entire electromagnetic spectrum**, denying, degrading, disrupting, or destroying the **full spectrum of globally emerging communication systems, sensors, and weapons systems dependant on the electromagnetic spectrum**." [emphasis mine] - 61

"DPG [Defense Planning Guidance] 04 tasked USD(AT&L) [Under Secretary of Defense for Acquisition, Technology and Logistics], in coordination with the CJCS [Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff] and Services, to develop recommendations to transform and extend EW capabilities, ... to detect, locate and attack the **full spectrum of globally emerging telecommunications equipment, situation awareness sensors and weapons engagement technologies operating within the electromagnetic spectrum**." [emphasis mine] – 59

Stealthy Platforms Above Your House

"Develop a coherent and comprehensive EW [Electronic Warfare] investment strategy for the architecture that... Pay particular attention to:

- (U) Projecting electronic attack into **denied areas by means of stealthy platforms**... As a matter of priority, accelerates joint development of modular **EW payloads for the Unmanned Combat Aerial Vehicle**." [emphasis mine] - 62

It is interesting to see the mention of stealthy platforms like unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs) because they are now patrolling both [the Canadian](#) and [Mexican borders](#) of the United States and will soon be patrolling the [arctic](#). With funding supplied by Homeland

Security, US police departments are also using UAVs to spy on the citizens below. A couple of examples are [Sacramento, California](#) and...

"one [North Carolina county](#) is using a UAV equipped with low-light and infrared cameras to keep watch on its citizens. The aircraft has been dispatched to monitor gatherings of motorcycle riders at the Gaston County fairgrounds from just a few hundred feet in the air--close enough to identify faces--and many more uses, such as the aerial detection of marijuana fields, are planned."

The Electronic Battlespace

"The ACTD [Advanced Concept Technology Demonstration] should examine a range of technologies including **a network of unmanned aerial vehicles and miniaturized, scatterable public address systems for satellite rebroadcast in denied areas**. It should also consider various message delivery systems, to include satellite radio and television, cellular phones and other wireless devices and the Internet." [emphasis mine] - 65

"Exploits other transformational EW initiatives, including use of the E-Space Analysis Center to correlate and fuse all available data that creates a **real time electronic battlespace picture**." [emphasis mine] - 62

How exactly do you create a real time electronic battlespace picture? And where exactly is the battlespace? A very similar statement was made in the Project for a New American Century document *Rebuilding America's Defenses* published in September of 2000 (more about this document [here](#) and [here](#).)

"New classes of sensors - commercial and military; on land, on and under sea, in the air and in space - will be linked together in dense networks that can be rapidly configured and reconfigured to provide future commanders with an unprecedented understanding of the battlefield." - pg 59

[An article](#) written by Mark Baard from [Parallelnormal.com](#) sheds some light on this subject.

"Philadelphia, San Francisco, Houston, and Providence, R.I. are among the cities partnering with private companies and the federal government to set up public broadband internet access. Providence used Homeland Security funds to construct a network for police, which may be made available to the public at a later date..."

"But even if the cities fail to complete their Wi-Fi projects, the military will be able to set up wireless networks within hours, perhaps even faster."

"The DOD [Department of Defense], which is in the middle of joint urban war-games with Homeland Security and Canadian, Israeli and other international forces, is experimenting with Wi-Fi networks it can set up on the fly."

"According to a recent DOD announcement for contractors, soldiers will be able to drop robots, called LANdroids... when they arrive in a city. The robots will then scurry off to position themselves, becoming nodes for a wireless communications network. (Click here to download a PDF of the DOD announcement.)"

"The Wi-Fi antennae dotting the urban landscape will serve not only as communications relays, but as transponders that can pinpoint the exact positions of individual computers and mobile phones - a scenario I described in the Boston Globe last year."

"In other words, where GPS loses site of a device (and its owner), Wi-Fi will pick up the trail."

"The antennae will also relay orders to the brain-chipped masses, members of the British Ministry of Defense and the DOD believe."

Conclusion

My next article will examine the Pentagon's desire to "[fight the net](#)" as outlined in the *Information Operation Roadmap*. Also, I will examine the use of [psychological operations](#) or PSYOP and highlight the [complete lack of limits](#) to the use of all these information operations, be it on domestic American or foreign audiences.

"We Must Fight the Net"

Information Operation Roadmap Part 3

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

November 19, 2007



[KDR: This article is available in French [here](#). Special thanks to Dany Quirion and Petrus Lombard for their efforts in translating this article.]

The Pentagon's [Information Operations Roadmap](#) is blunt about the fact that an internet, with the potential for free speech, is in direct opposition to their goals. The internet needs to be dealt with as if it were an enemy "weapons system".

The 2003 Pentagon document entitled the *Information Operation Roadmap* was released

to the public after a Freedom of Information Request by the National Security Archive at George Washington University in 2006. A detailed explanation of the major thrust of this document and the significance of information operations or information warfare was described by me [here](#).

Computer Network Attack

From the *Information Operation Roadmap*:

"When implemented the recommendations of this report will effectively jumpstart a rapid improvement of CNA [Computer Network Attack] capability." - 7

"Enhanced IO [information operations] capabilities for the warfighter, including: ... A robust **offensive suite of capabilities to include full-range electronic and computer network attack...**" [emphasis mine] - 7

Would the Pentagon use its computer network attack capabilities on the Internet?

Fighting the Net

"We Must Fight the Net. DoD [Department of Defense] is building an information-centric force. Networks are increasingly the operational center of gravity, and **the Department must be prepared to "fight the net."**" [emphasis mine] - 6

"DoD's "Defense in Depth" strategy should operate on the premise that **the Department will "fight the net" as it would a weapons system.**" [emphasis mine] - 13

It should come as no surprise that the Pentagon would aggressively attack the "information highway" in their attempt to achieve dominance in information warfare. Donald Rumsfeld's involvement in the Project for a New American Century sheds more light on the need and desire to control information.

PNAC Dominating Cyberspace

The Project for a New American Century (PNAC) was founded in 1997 with many members that later became the nucleus of the George W. Bush administration. [The list](#) includes: Jeb Bush, Dick Cheney, I. Lewis Libby, Donald Rumsfeld, and Paul Wolfowitz among many other powerful but less well know names. Their [stated purpose](#) was to use a hugely expanded U.S. military to project "American global leadership." In September of 2000, PNAC published a now infamous document entitled *Rebuilding America's Defences*. This document has a very similar theme as the Pentagon's *Information Operations Roadmap* which was signed by then Secretary of Defense Donald Rumsfeld.

From *Rebuilding America's Defenses*:

"It is now commonly understood that **information** and other new technologies... are creating a dynamic that **may threaten America's ability to exercise its dominant military power.**" [emphasis mine] - 4

"Control of space and cyberspace. Much as control of the high seas - and the protection of international commerce - defined global powers in the past, so will control of the new "international commons" be a key to world power in the future. An America incapable of protecting its interests or that of its allies in space or the "**infosphere**" will find it difficult to exert global political leadership." [emphasis mine] - 51

"Although it may take several decades for the process of transformation to unfold, in time, the art of warfare on air, land, and sea will be vastly different than it is today, and "combat" likely will take place in new dimensions: in space, "**cyber-space**," and perhaps the world of microbes." [emphasis mine] - 60

For more on *Rebuilding America's Defences* read [this](#).

Internet 2

Part of the *Information Operation Roadmap*'s plans for the internet are to "ensure the graceful degradation of the network rather than its collapse." (pg 45) This is presented in "defensive" terms, but presumably, it is as exclusively defensive as the Department of Defense.

As far as the Pentagon is concerned the internet is not all bad, after all, it was the Department of Defense through DARPA that [gave us the internet](#) in the first place. The internet is useful not only as a business tool but also is excellent for monitoring and tracking users, acclimatizing people to a virtual world, and developing detailed psychological profiles of every user, among many other Pentagon positives. But, one problem with the current internet is the potential for the dissemination of ideas and information not consistent with US government themes and messages, commonly known as free speech. Naturally, since the plan was to completely dominate the "infosphere," the internet would have to be adjusted or replaced with an upgraded and even more Pentagon friendly successor.

In [an article](#) by Paul Joseph Watson of [Prison Planet.com](#), he describes the emergence of Internet 2.

"The development of "Internet 2" is also designed to create an online caste system whereby the old Internet hubs would be allowed to break down and die, forcing people to use the new taxable, censored and regulated world wide web. If you're struggling to comprehend exactly what the Internet will look like in five years unless we resist this, just look at China and their latest efforts to completely eliminate dissent and anonymity on the web."

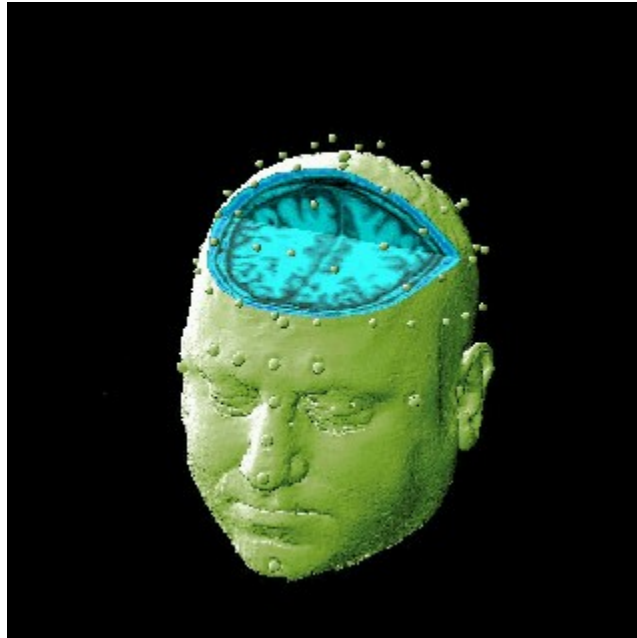
Conclusion

The next article will examine the Pentagon's use of [psychological operations or PSYOP](#) and the final article in this series will examine whether or not there are any [limits to using information operations](#) on the American public or foreign audiences.

Information Warfare Using Aggressive Psychological Operations

Information Operation Roadmap Part 4

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)
November 26, 2007



The Pentagon's plans for psychological operations or PSYOP in the global information environment of the 21st century are wide ranging and aggressive. These desires are outlined in the 2003 Pentagon document signed by Donald Rumsfeld in his capacity as the Secretary of Defense called the [Information Operation Roadmap](#).

More detail about the origins and purpose of this document can be read in the first part of this series [here](#). Also, a description of the Pentagon's desire to [dominate the entire electro-magnetic spectrum](#) and their need to "[fight the net](#)" as outline in the *Information Operation Roadmap* were previously described.

What is a PSYOP?

A PSYOP is not specifically defined in this document but it does provide some insight into the wide ranging activities that are considered PSYOP.

"The customary position was that "public affairs informs, while public diplomacy and **PSYOP influence.**" PSYOP also has been perceived as the most aggressive of the three information activities, **using diverse means, including psychological manipulation and personal threats.**" [emphasis mine] - 26

"One result of public affairs and civil military operations is greater support for military endeavors and thus, conversely these activities **can help discourage and dissuade enemies, which PSYOP does more directly** with its own tactics, techniques and procedures." [emphasis mine] - 10

"PSYOP messages disseminated to any audience except **individual decision-makers** (and perhaps even then) will often be replayed by the news media for much larger audiences, including the American public." [emphasis mine] - 26

"A PSYOP force ready to conduct **sophisticated target-audience analysis and modify behaviour with multi-media PSYOP campaigns featuring commercial-quality products that can be rapidly disseminated** throughout the Combatant Commanders area of operations." [emphasis mine] - 63

"PSYOP products must be based on **in-depth knowledge of the audience's decision-making processes** and the factors influencing his decisions, **produced rapidly at the highest quality standards, and powerfully disseminated directly to targeted audiences** throughout the area of operations." [emphasis mine] - 6

"Better depiction of the **attitudes, perceptions and decision-making processes** of an adversary. Understanding how and why adversaries make decisions will require improvements in **Human Intelligence (HUMINT) and open source exploitation**, as well as improved analytic tools and methods." [emphasis mine] - 39

"SOCOM [Special Operations Command] should create a Joint PSYOP Support Element to coordinate Combatant Command programs and products with the Joint Staff and OSD [Office of the Secretary of Defense] to provide **rapidly produced, commercial-quality PSYOP product prototypes consistent with overall U.S. Government themes and messages.**" [emphasis mine] - 15

"SOCOM's ongoing PSYOP Advanced Concept Technology Demonstration and modernization efforts should permit the **timely, long-range dissemination of products** with various PSYOP delivery systems. This includes **satellite, radio and television, cellular phones and other wireless devices, the Internet** and upgrades to traditional delivery systems such as **leaflets and loudspeakers** that are highly responsive to maneuver commanders." [emphasis mine] - 15

"PSYOP equipment capabilities require 21st Century technology. This modernization

would permit the long-range dissemination of PSYOP messages via new information venues such as **satellites, the Internet, personal digital assistants and cell phones**:

- (U) PSYOP ACTD. Commencing in FY04, SOCOM [Special Operations Command] initiates an Advanced Concept Technology Demonstration (ACTD) to address dissemination of PSYOP products into denied areas. The ACTD should examine a range of technologies including **a network of unmanned aerial vehicles and miniaturized, scatterable public address systems for satellite rebroadcast in denied areas**. It should also consider various message delivery systems, to include **satellite radio and television, cellular phones and other wireless devices and the Internet**." [emphasis mine] - 65

"Rapid, fully integrated nodal and network analysis providing Combatant Commanders with **holistic kinetic and non-kinetic solutions** for a full range of electromagnetic, physical and human IO [information operations] targets." [emphasis mine] - 39

"Capabilities such as physical security, information assurance, **counter intelligence and physical attack** make important contributions to effective IO." [emphasis mine] - 23

Third Party PSYOP

The Pentagon is also willing to use third parties for their PSYOP.

"Identify and disseminate the views of third party advocates that support U.S. positions. These sources may not articulate the U.S. position the way that the USG [US Government] would, but that may nonetheless have a positive influence." [emphasis mine] - 27

Under recommendation number 48 - "Create a Joint PSYOP Support Element" - is the following:

"Contract for commercial sources for enhanced product development." [emphasis mine] - 64

The use of third party advocates or front groups for the dissemination of US government propaganda is well documented. A couple of recent examples include the illegal payment of [\\$1.6 billion for domestic fake news](#) and [similar activities in Iraq](#) using the Lincoln Group among others.

Virtual PSYOP

Not only is the Pentagon exploiting new and old technology for aggressive behavior modification, they can also practice and refine their techniques in a virtual simulation of the entire world.

From [an article](#) by Mark Baard:

"U.S defense, intel and homeland security officials are constructing a parallel world, on a computer, which the agencies will use to test propaganda messages and military strategies."

"Called the Sentient World Simulation, the program uses AI routines based upon the psychological theories of Marty Seligman, among others. (Seligman introduced the theory of "learned helplessness" in the 1960s, after shocking beagles until they cowered, urinating, on the bottom of their cages.)"

"Yank a country's water supply. Stage a military coup. SWS will tell you what happens next."

"The sim will feature an AR avatar for each person in the real world, based upon data collected about us from government records and the internet."

How useful do you think your new MySpace or Facebook account is in helping the Pentagon develop a detailed psychological profile of you? Do you think they would be shy in exploiting such a valuable source of personal data?

AIDS Awareness

PSYOP in the past, however, often was used to support U.S. Government public diplomacy and information objectives with non-adversarial audiences. These actions include counter-drug, demining and **AIDS awareness programs** in friendly countries." [emphasis mine] - 25

It is a minor point in the context of this document, but it is worth reflecting on why US military PSYOP were used for AIDS awareness.

Are There Any Limits to Information Warfare?

An obvious question arises from the description of PSYOP described by the *Information Operation Roadmap*, are there any limits? Can PSYOP be conducted on the American public or just foreign audiences? On adversaries or non-adversaries? Can they be performed during peacetime? [My next article](#) will attempt to show just how few limits there actually are.

Information Warfare Without Limits

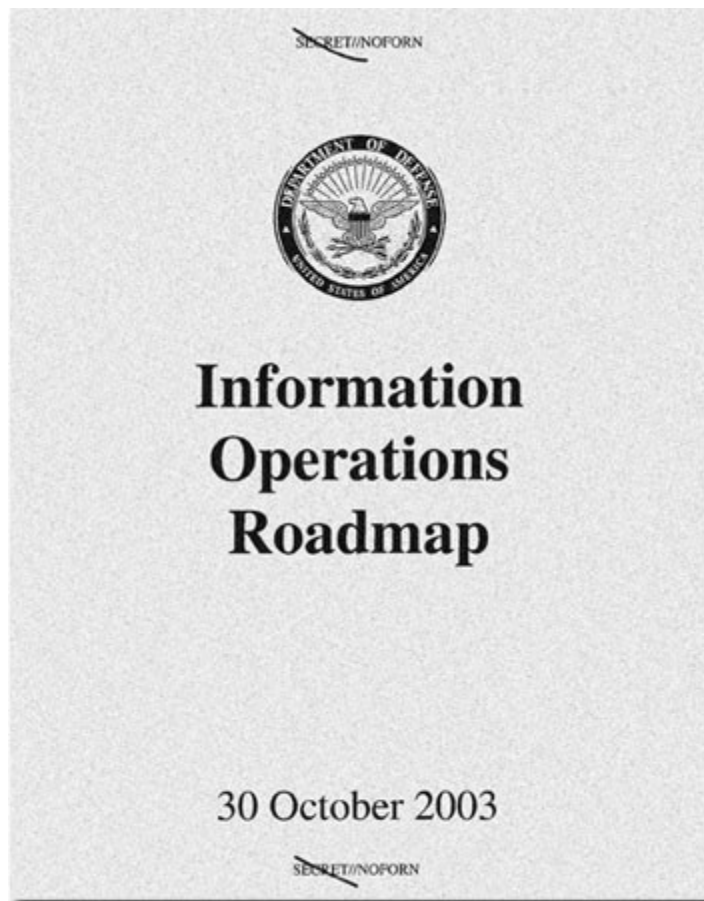
Information Operation Roadmap Part 5

Brent Jessop - [Knowledge Driven Revolution.com](http://KnowledgeDrivenRevolution.com)

December 3, 2007

The 2003 Pentagon document entitled [*Information Operation Roadmap*](#) describes the need to [dominate the entire electromagnetic spectrum](#), ['fight the net'](#), and use [psychological operations to aggressively modify behaviour](#). But one major question remains; are there any limits to information warfare?

If you are unfamiliar with the *Information Operation Roadmap* please read a [previous article](#) I wrote describing the major thrust of this document.



PSYOP, Public Diplomacy and Public Affairs

From the *Information Operation Roadmap*:

"In the past some basic similarities and dissimilarities between PSYOP [psychological operations], support to public diplomacy and public affairs generally have been accepted. Historically all three used **truth to bolster credibility**, and all three addressed **foreign audiences, both adversary and non-adversaries**. Only public affairs addressed **domestic audiences**. In addition, all three activities sought a positive impact for USG [US Government] interests, but with some differences in the methods employed and objectives sought. The customary position was that **"public affairs informs, while public diplomacy and PSYOP influence."** PSYOP also has been perceived as the

most aggressive of the three information activities, using diverse means, including psychological manipulation and personal threats." [emphasis mine] - 26

There is a lot happening in this paragraph, first, there is the almost humorous statement; "truth to bolster credibility". Does anyone remember WMDs, Saddam and 9/11, maybe some uranium from Niger? Do you believe these examples of public affairs were to inform or influence?

Secondly, "USG interests" are by no means the same as the interests of the average American. Thirdly, the concept that only public affairs is being addressed to domestic audiences, is simply absurd given the ability of information to pass across borders. This document even admits as much:

"Impact of the global village. The increasing ability of people in most parts of the globe to **access international sources makes targeting particular audiences more difficult**. Today **the distinction between foreign and domestic audiences becomes more a question of USG [US Government] intent rather than information dissemination practices**:

PSYOP is restricted by both DoD [Department of Defense] policy and executive order from targeting American audiences, our military personnel and news agencies or outlets... However, **information intended for foreign audiences, including public diplomacy and PSYOP, increasingly is consumed by our domestic audience** and vice-versa... PSYOP messages disseminated to any audience except individual decision-makers (and perhaps even then) **will often be replayed by the news media for much larger audiences, including the American public**." [emphasis mine] - 26

So there you have it, "the distinction between foreign and domestic audiences becomes more a question of US government intent rather than information dissemination practices". Therefore, the American public is fair game for all forms of US government propaganda, be it, public affairs, public diplomacy or PSYOP. Remember, PSYOP use "diverse means, including psychological manipulation and personal threats" among [many other things](#).

It should also be highlighted that PSYOP are only **restricted** not **prohibited** from being used on the American public. If that loophole is not large enough, the distinctions between the tactics of public affairs, public diplomacy and PSYOP are elaborated in Appendix C of the *Information Operation Roadmap*. The very last task listed for PSYOP is: "when called upon, support to local public affairs activities".

Appendix C of this document is well worth the one page read ([pg 71](#)). Some other highlight include:

Public Affairs:

"Rapid Response/Truth Squads and "Briefings Plus" "

"Humanitarian road shows"

"Media embeds"

"Combat Camera products on events not accessible to news media"

Public Diplomacy:

"Content of speeches or OP/ED pieces by senior DoD [Department of Defense] officials to foreign audiences"

"Talking points for private exchanges with foreign leaders"

"Overt dissemination of USG [US Government] policy. e.g. Asia-Pacific Forum"

PSYOP:

"Radio/TV/Print/Web media designed to directly modify behaviour and distributed in theatre supporting military endeavors in semi or non-permissive environments"

"When called upon, support to theatre public diplomacy"

"DoD advisors to assist friendly forces in developing PSYOP programs"

Changing Definitions

Definitions are another great tool if you are trying to deceive. As described above the definitions of and distinction between public affair, public diplomacy and PSYOP are left intentionally vague. Lawyers make a living out of this type of deception and their hands are all over this document.

"PSYOP **should** focus on support to military endeavors (exercises, deployments and operations) in non-permissive or semi-permissive environments (i.e. when adversaries are part of the equation).

- (U) However, PSYOP forces and capabilities may be employed to support U.S. public diplomacy as part of approved theatre security cooperation guideline. In this case PSYOP personnel and equipment are not conducting a PSYOP mission, but rather are providing military support to public diplomacy." [emphasis mine] - 27

Get that? If PSYOP forces and equipment are used in support of military endeavours, it is a PSYOP mission. If PSYOP forces and equipment are used in support of public diplomacy, it is public diplomacy.

A Quick Recap

A close read of the above quotes reveal that information operations, specifically PSYOP, can be used on both domestic and foreign audiences, in non-permissive or semi-permissive environments, and on adversary and non-adversary. Are there any other limits?

Peace, Crisis and War

"The Department's concept of IO [information operations] should emphasize **full spectrum IO** that makes a potent contribution to effects based operations across the **full**

range of military operations during peace, crisis and war. [emphasis mine]" - 7

"Peacetime preparation. The Department's IO concept should **emphasize that full-spectrum information operations are full-time operations requiring extensive preparations in peacetime... Well before crises develop**, the IO battlespace should be prepared through intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance and extensive planning activities... Similarly, considerable effort should be made to characterize potential adversary audiences, and particularly senior decision-makers and decision-making processes and priorities. If such human factors analysis is not conducted **well in advance of the conflict**, it will not be possible to craft PSYOP themes and messages that will be effective in modifying adversary behaviour" [emphasis mine] - 8

"Clear, unambiguous and streamlined DoD [Department of Defense] oversight and policy that empowers Combatant Commanders to execute **full spectrum IO before, during and after combat operations.**" [emphasis mine] - 20

Denied Areas

"Improvements in PSYOP capability are required to rapidly generate audience specific, commercial-quality products into **denied areas.**" [emphasis mine] - 26

"Projecting electronic attack into **denied areas by means of stealthy platforms.**" [emphasis mine] - 62

Conclusion

Does the Pentagon define any real limits to information warfare? Information operations can be used on both domestic and foreign audiences, in non-permissive or semi-permissive environments, on adversary and non-adversary, during peace, crisis and war, and in denied areas. Should we really expect anything less? They did tell us that their goal was full spectrum dominance.



KNOWLEDGE DRIVEN REVOLUTION